

Министерство образования и науки Российской Федерации  
Федеральное государственное бюджетное образовательное учреждение  
высшего профессионального образования  
«Комсомольский-на-Амуре государственный технический университет»

**Е. Ю. Першина**

**ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА.  
МОРФОЛОГИЯ**

Утверждено в качестве учебного пособия  
Учёным советом Федерального государственного бюджетного  
образовательного учреждения высшего профессионального образования  
«Комсомольский-на-Амуре государственный технический университет»

Комсомольск-на-Амуре  
2015

УДК 811.111(07)  
ББК 81.2Англ-9  
П279

***Рецензенты:***

Кафедра иностранных языков Института педагогики и психологии  
ФГБОУ ВПО «Амурский гуманитарно-педагогический государственный  
университет», заведующая кафедрой кандидат филологических наук,  
доцент И. Б. Косицына;

К. В. Боровикова, кандидат филологических наук, доцент, декан  
факультета филологии и межкультурной коммуникации ФГБОУ ВПО  
«Амурский гуманитарно-педагогический государственный университет»

**Першина, Е. Ю.**

П279 Практическая грамматика английского языка. Морфология : учеб.  
пособие / Е. Ю. Першина. – Комсомольск-на-Амуре : ФГБОУ ВПО  
«КнАГТУ», 2015. – 196 с.  
ISBN 978-5-7765-1156-1

Главная цель учебного пособия – способствовать овладению знаниями английской грамматики и развитию навыков перевода аутентичных профессионально-ориентированных текстов.

В учебное пособие включены грамматические и лексические упражнения, направленные на формирование и развитие навыков перевода, закрепление профессиональной лексики, лексико-грамматический материал для самоконтроля и самопроверки.

Предназначено для студентов, обучающихся по направлению «Переводчик в профессиональной сфере», и представляет собой сборник теоретического материала и упражнений по грамматике английского языка. Рекомендуются к использованию всеми, кто изучает грамматику английского языка.

УДК 811.111(07)  
ББК 81.2Англ-9

ISBN 978-5-7765-1156-1

© ФГБОУ ВПО «Комсомольский-на-Амуре  
государственный технический  
университет», 2015

## CONTENTS

ВВЕДЕНИЕ.....	6
ТЕМА 1. ГЛАГОЛ ‘TO BE’ (THE VERB ‘TO BE’) .....	7
1.1. Спряжение глагола ‘to be’ .....	7
1.2. Функции глагола ‘to be’ .....	7
1.3. Образование вопросительных и отрицательных форм .....	8
ТЕМА 2. ГЛАГОЛ ‘TO HAVE’ (THE VERB ‘TO HAVE’) .....	11
2.1. Формы глагола ‘to have’ .....	11
2.2. Функции глагола ‘to have’ .....	12
2.3. Образование вопросительных и отрицательных форм .....	12
2.4. Выражение ‘have got’ .....	14
ТЕМА 3. ОБОРОТ ‘THERE + TO BE’ (THE CONSTRUCTION ‘THERE + TO BE’) .....	16
ТЕМА 4. АРТИКЛЬ (THE ARTICLE) .....	20
4.1. Неопределенный артикль (The Indefinite Article) .....	20
4.2. Определенный артикль (The Definite Article) .....	21
4.3. Употребление артиклей с именами .....	23
ТЕМА 5. ИМЯ СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE NOUN) .....	27
5.1. Исчисляемые и неисчисляемые существительные (The Count and Non-count Nouns) .....	28
5.2. Число существительных (The Number) .....	29
5.3. Падеж имен существительных (The Case) .....	32
5.4. Притяжательный падеж имен существительных .....	33
5.5. Существительное в функции определения .....	35
5.6. Словообразовательные суффиксы имени существительного .....	38
ТЕМА 6. ИМЯ ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE ADJECTIVE) .....	42
6.1. Степени сравнения прилагательных (The Degrees of Comparison) .....	44
6.2. Сравнительные конструкции (The Comparative Constructions) .....	47
6.3. Словообразовательные суффиксы .....	50
6.4. Неочевидные значения слова ‘good’ .....	51
ТЕМА 7. ЧИСЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE NUMERAL) .....	53
7.1. Количественные и порядковые числительные (The Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals) .....	53
7.2. Чтение числительных свыше ста .....	54
7.3. Чтение дробей (The Fractions) .....	55
7.4. Хронологические даты (The Dates) .....	57
ТЕМА 8. МЕСТОИМЕНИЕ (THE PRONOUN) .....	58
8.1. Личные местоимения (The Personal Pronouns) .....	59

8.2. Притяжательные местоимения (The Possessive Pronouns)....	59
8.3. Возвратно-усилительные местоимения (The Reflexive Pronouns).....	60
8.4. Указательные местоимения (The Demonstrative Pronouns) ...	64
8.5. Вопросительные и относительные местоимения (The Interrogative and Relative Pronouns).....	65
8.6. Неопределенные местоимения и их производные (The Indefinite Pronouns and their Derivatives) .....	66
8.7. Количественные местоимения (The Quantitative Pronouns)...	71
8.8. Многофункциональность местоимения <i>it</i> .....	74
8.9. Многофункциональность слова <i>'that'</i> .....	75
ТЕМА 9. НАРЕЧИЕ (THE ADVERB) .....	78
9.1. Место наречия в предложении .....	78
9.2. Степени сравнения наречий (The Degrees of Comparison)....	81
9.3. Формы наречий .....	82
9.4. Словообразовательные суффиксы .....	84
9.5. "Good" или "well" .....	84
ТЕМА 10. ПРЕДЛОГ (THE PREPOSITION) .....	89
ТЕМА 11. СОЮЗЫ (THE CONJUNCTIONS).....	106
ТЕМА 12. СЛОВА-ЗАМЕСТИТЕЛИ (THE NOUN-SUBSTITUTES) .....	114
12.1. Местоимения <i>'one', 'ones'</i> .....	114
12.2. Местоимения <i>'that', 'those'</i> .....	116
12.3. Глагол <i>to do</i> .....	118
ТЕМА 13. ГЛАГОЛ (THE VERB).....	120
ТЕМА 14. АКТИВНЫЙ ЗАЛОГ (THE ACTIVE VOICE) .....	124
14.1. Времена неопределенной группы (the indefinite tenses)....	124
14.1.1. <i>The Present Indefinite Tense [do (does), V1(s)]</i> .....	124
14.1.2. <i>The Past Indefinite Tense [did, V2(ed)]</i> .....	127
14.1.3. <i>The Future Indefinite Tense [will + V1]</i> .....	130
14.2. Времена продленной группы (the continuous tenses) [to be + Ving] .....	135
14.2.1. <i>The Present Continuous Tense [am, are, is + Ving]</i> .....	136
14.2.2. <i>The Past Continuous Tense [was, were + Ving]</i> .....	136
14.2.3. <i>The Future Continuous Tense [will be + Ving]</i> .....	136
14.3. Времена завершенной группы (the perfect tenses) [to have + V3(ed)] .....	143
14.3.1. <i>The Present Perfect Tense [have / has + V3(ed)]</i> .....	144
14.3.2. <i>The Past Perfect Tense [had + V3(ed)]</i> .....	144
14.3.3. <i>The Future Perfect Tense [will have + V3(ed)]</i> .....	145
14.4. Времена завершенной продленной группы (the perfect continuous tenses) [have been + Ving].....	154

14.4.1. <i>The Present Perfect Continuous Tense</i> [have / has been + Ving] .....	154
14.4.2. <i>The Past Perfect Continuous Tense</i> [had been + Ving] .....	154
14.4.3. <i>The Future Perfect Continuous Tense</i> [will have been + Ving] .....	154
ТЕМА 15. СОГЛАСОВАНИЕ ВРЕМЕН (THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES) .....	161
TESTS .....	164
KEYS TO TESTS .....	190
ЗАКЛЮЧЕНИЕ .....	194
БИБЛИОГРАФИЧЕСКИЙ СПИСОК .....	194

## ВВЕДЕНИЕ

*It's a teacher who can open the door, but it's a pupil who must enter it.*  
*Confucius*

Очень часто англичане или американцы слышат от нас следующие выражения: «Сообщите, пожалуйста, какому-нибудь мистеру Смиту, что ему звонил какой-то мистер Иванов». Замечательно, не правда ли? Или «Пилот является членом самолета». Фантастика! «Если есть время, будем почитать». Ну а это уже из переводческой «оперы». И это ещё самые безобидные ошибки, на которые нам указывают (или не указывают, посмеиваясь между собой, и увозя «на память», чтобы поделиться со своими родными или коллегами). Нам может быть обидно, что в глазах иностранцев мы выглядим смешными, но кого в этом винить? Недогадливых иностранцев, не умеющих выявить суть сказанного? Или себя, к сожалению, не учитывающих нюансы чужого языка. Ведь мы в свою очередь искренне веселимся, когда иностранец «блуждает» в поисках правильного падежного окончания для русского слова или произношения самого слова. Достаточно только вспомнить фильм «Осенний марафон», где иностранный гость героя переводчика Бузыкина с трудом выговаривает слово «вытрезвиватель» и называет его местом, где он провел ночь.

Другой язык – это другой мир со своей системой и правилами, со своими особенностями и сложностями, со своими неожиданными поворотами и уступами [4, с. 55]. И если вы всерьёз надумали «посетить» этот мир, а может быть, и покорить (как знать?), то эта книга для вас. Она послужит проводником в мир активной и правильной английской речи. Грамматика английского языка – явление не случайное, как зачастую кажется тем, кто обращается достаточно вольно с непонятными «лишними» словами. От правильного применения грамматики зависит весь логический строй вашей мысли, вся красота английский речи в ваших устах. Ничто не раздражает англичанина или американца сильнее, чем неправильное употребление грамматических явлений. Вас просто перестают слушать, устав от бесплотных попыток понять, что же вы все-таки имели в виду.

Что же делать? Просто взять и проштудировать эту книгу. Образные примеры, легкость подачи и восприятия оригинального материала, отображение современного состояния разговорного языка превратят утомительный процесс обучения в увлекательное путешествие в мир английской грамматики.

Внимательно изучая эту книгу, следуя рекомендациям автора, вы усовершенствуете знания английской грамматики, полностью избавитесь от типичных ошибок в разговоре и приобретёте уверенность в общении.

## ТЕМА 1. ГЛАГОЛ 'TO BE' (THE VERB 'TO BE')

Глагол **'to be'** переводится на русский язык *быть, есть, находиться*, относится к группе неправильных глаголов (**to be – was, were – been**) и спрягается по лицам и числам [6, с. 230].

### 1.1. Спряжение глагола 'to be'

Present	Past	Future
<b>I am</b>	<b>I was</b>	<b>I will be</b>
<b>you are</b>	<b>you were</b>	<b>you will be</b>
<b>he, she, it is</b>	<b>he, she, it was</b>	<b>he, she, it will be</b>
<b>we are</b>	<b>we were</b>	<b>we will be</b>
<b>you are</b>	<b>you were</b>	<b>you will be</b>
<b>they are</b>	<b>they were</b>	<b>they will be</b>

Существуют следующие краткие формы: I'm, I'm not, you're, you aren't, he's, she's, it's, he isn't, she isn't, it isn't, we're, we aren't, they're, they aren't, wasn't, weren't, I'll be, I'll not be, won't be.

### 1.2. Функции глагола 'to be'

1. Смысловый глагол (переводится *быть, есть, находиться*). В настоящем времени глагол часто не переводится:

*The book **is** on the table.* – Книга (**лежит**) на столе.

2. Глагол-связка (переводится *являться, быть* или не переводится вообще):

*You **are** students.* – Вы – студенты.

*You **were** pupils.* – Вы **были** школьниками.

3. Модальный глагол (переводится *должен*):

*She **is to** study well.* – Она **должна** хорошо учиться.

4. Вспомогательный глагол для образования времен группы Continuous и пассивного залога (the Passive Voice) (не переводится):

*They **are** writing now.* – Они **сейчас** пишут.

*The ship **was** built last year.* – Корабль **построили** в прошлом году.

## Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Put the sentences into the Past Indefinite and the Future Indefinite Tenses.**

1. He is very busy. – \_\_\_\_\_
  2. She is in London on business trip. – \_\_\_\_\_
  3. I am a post-graduate at the University. – \_\_\_\_\_
  4. It is very kind of you. – \_\_\_\_\_
  5. You are a good mathematician. – \_\_\_\_\_
  6. We are glad to meet you. – \_\_\_\_\_
  7. They are at the lecture. – \_\_\_\_\_
  8. This method is correct and reliable. – \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Universities are great educational and scientific centres. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
10. New experiments are always interesting. – \_\_\_\_\_
  11. All shops are open on week-ends. – \_\_\_\_\_
  12. He is interested in mathematics. – \_\_\_\_\_
  13. They are good at English. – \_\_\_\_\_
  14. She is fond of tennis. – \_\_\_\_\_

### 1.3. Образование вопросительных и отрицательных форм

Вопросительная форма образуется с помощью соответствующей формы глагола **'to be'**, которая ставится перед подлежащим:

*Are you students? – Yes, we **are**. (No, we **aren't**.)*

*Were they workers? – Yes, they **were**. (No, they **weren't**.)*

*Will she **be** a teacher? – Yes, she **will**. (No, she **won't**.)*

Отрицательная форма образуется с помощью отрицательной частицы **'not'**, которая ставится сразу же после глагола **'to be'**:

*I **am not** an engineer.      He **was not** a doctor.      We **will not be** workers.*

## Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 2. Put the sentences into interrogative and negative forms.**

1. He is a post-graduate. – \_\_\_\_\_
  2. They are in the workshop now. – \_\_\_\_\_
  3. She was in the chemical laboratory a week ago. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
4. You were there last year. – \_\_\_\_\_
  5. They will be at the plant tomorrow. – \_\_\_\_\_
  6. I will be an engineer in 5 years. – \_\_\_\_\_



7. They will be good at chemistry. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. The new shop was open yesterday. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. She is fond of tennis. – \_\_\_\_\_

### Обзорные упражнения

**Ex. 3. Translate the sentences paying attention to the different forms of the verb 'to be'.**

1. He is usually at home on Sundays.
2. I am not sure that he is right.
3. You are always late.
4. She is very happy in her family life.
5. We are good friends now, but only a year ago we were on bad terms.
6. They are sociable and easy to deal with.
7. Computer is one of the most important developments of our century.
8. Computers are electronic systems.
9. Second generation computers were smaller than their earlier types.
10. The invention was of great importance for the whole mankind.
11. He was on business trip last month.
12. The main task was to choose the proper equipment.
13. I will be very grateful to you if you accept my invitation.
14. They will be here in time.
15. The equipment will be safe here.
16. Robots are ideal workers.
17. In ancient Rus monasteries were centres of theoretical knowledge.
18. We will be glad to visit you.
19. Will you be so kind as to show me to the theatre?
20. This kind of work will be both interesting and helpful.

**Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks with the suitable form of the verb 'to be'.**

1. His father \_\_\_\_\_ a well-known actor.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ an engineer now, but ten years ago I \_\_\_\_\_ a student at the Technical University.
3. My new flat \_\_\_\_\_ big and comfortable.
4. Last year he \_\_\_\_\_ in the USA.
5. Our laboratories \_\_\_\_\_ new and modern, but some equipment \_\_\_\_\_ quite out-of-date.
6. In the past they \_\_\_\_\_ close friends, but now their relations \_\_\_\_\_ rather cool.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ an engineer in five years.
8. Next month our delegation \_\_\_\_\_ in France.
9. In future our contacts \_\_\_\_\_ permanent and stable.
10. Yesterday the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ long and boring, but I hope it \_\_\_\_\_ more interesting tomorrow.

11. I don't know what the results of the last experiment \_\_\_\_\_, but I \_\_\_\_\_ quite sure they \_\_\_\_\_ correct next time.
12. Who \_\_\_\_\_ responsible for this kind of work today?
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ very glad to see you next Sunday.
14. You \_\_\_\_\_ as beautiful as you \_\_\_\_\_ many years ago.

**Ex. 5. Make up sentences, using the verb 'to be' in different forms according to the model.**

**Model:** Columbus, a sailor, became, when, 14, he, (*to be*).  
Columbus became a sailor when he was 14.

1. America, an unknown land, earlier, (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Columbus, a tall man, (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Young men, the University, entered, this year. Now, students, they, (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_
4. The experiments, last week, were carried out. The results, unexpected, of the experiments, (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_
5. Engineers, they, in 5 years, (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_
6. The world, round, (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_
7. I, he, sure, a nice man, (*to be*), (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Hope, the weather, I, good, on Sunday, (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_
9. In 1999, she, a stewardess, (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_
10. He, of a shipbuilding plant, the manager, (*to be*). – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Translate into English.**

1. Её нет здесь сейчас, она дома. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Его не было дома вчера вечером. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Он один из лучших врачей нашей больницы. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Его задача заключается в том, чтобы собрать необходимые данные по этому вопросу к 1 июня. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. Он находится сейчас в Крыму. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Они будут там в 5 часов. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. Пароход должен прийти в 6 часов вечера. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Его брат инженер. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. Я должен был встретиться с ним в 8 вечера. – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Мы будем рады вас видеть. – \_\_\_\_\_
11. Через пять лет они будут высококвалифицированными специалистами в области машиностроения. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Translate into Russian.**

1. Everything is in constant motion.
2. The solution was in its stable state.
3. Our task is to raise temperature.
4. To do this to spoil the device.
5. This proposition was true.
6. The main problem will be controlling temperature.
7. The number of participants was twenty-five.
8. This approach will be promising.
9. This was not surprising.
10. They are interested in his work.
11. This chapter is devoted to system analysis.
12. In the presence of this compound there was formed a mixture of two products.
13. Laughter is the best medicine.
14. The golden age was never the present age.
15. There were only students in our trade-team.
16. In any case the usefulness of these correlations is questionable.
17. The amino group is in the  $\beta$  – position.
18. A simpler method is to render the aqueous solution more acidic.
19. The plus or minus sign is to be chosen in each of these equations.
20. Symbolism is not only of practical use but of great interest.
21. We are trying to do our best.
22. This was due to the noise disturbances.
23. Intuitive conclusions based on immediate observation are not always to be trusted, for they are often misleading.
24. A different method of procedure would be to list all the known geometric facts.
25. The components of a functional diagram are interconnected logical modules.

## **ТЕМА 2. ГЛАГОЛ ‘TO HAVE’ (THE VERB ‘TO HAVE’)**

Глагол ‘**to have**’ переводится на русский язык *иметь, обладать* и относится к группе неправильных глаголов (**to have – had – had**).

### **2.1. Формы глагола ‘to have’**

Глагол ‘**to have**’ только во времени Present Indefinite в 3-м лице единственного числа имеет форму ‘**has**’. В остальных временах глагол изменяется по обычным правилам:

*I **have** a son.      He **has** a daughter.      They **had** a nice cottage.*  
*She **will have** a fashionable car.*

Существуют следующие краткие формы: I've, you've, we've, they've, you haven't, you've not.

## 2.2. Функции глагола 'to have'

1. Смысловой глагол (переводится *иметь, есть, обладать*):

*He **has** a dog.* – У него **есть** собака.

2. Модальный глагол (переводится *должен*):

*You **have to** consult a doctor.* – Ты **должен** проконсультироваться у врача.

3. Вспомогательный глагол для образования времен группы Perfect (не переводится):

*I **have** read this book recently.* – Я недавно прочитала эту книгу.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Put the sentences into the Past Indefinite and the Future Indefinite Tenses.**

1. They have a big and comfortable flat. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. My friend has much work. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. His mother has a very interesting job. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. She has a dog and a cat. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. We have many interesting books. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. I have a car. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. These students have 5 lectures every day. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. All people have equal rights. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. Each party has its own committees. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. The laboratories have up-to-date equipment. – \_\_\_\_\_

## 2.3. Образование вопросительных и отрицательных форм

Вопросительная форма глагола **'to have'** образуется с помощью вспомогательных глаголов соответствующих временных форм (см. тема 14.1. Времена неопределенной группы):

*Do you **have** any classes today? – Yes, I do. (No, I don't.)*

*Did you **have** any classes yesterday? – Yes, I **did**. (No, I **didn't**.)*

Отрицательная форма образуется с помощью отрицательной частицы ‘no’, которая ставится сразу же после глагола ‘to have’:

*I **have no** classes today.*

*I **had no (not any)** classes yesterday.*

### Тренировочные упражнения [3, с. 56]

**Ex. 2. Put the sentences into interrogative and negative forms.**

1. They have seminars every day. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. They had a lot of flowers in the garden last summer. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. We'll have letters from home next week. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. He often has a sore throat. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. I usually have warm shoes in the winter. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. She had a new dress previous summer. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. We have many laboratories at the Institute. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. This system has some advantages. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. They had some problems with their work. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. They will have a light supper tonight. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Translate the sentences paying attention to the different forms of the verb ‘to have’.**

1. We usually have many lectures every day.

2. I have neither time nor desire to discuss this problem.

3. I have a wife and two children.

4. He has a large family.

5. She has many things to do.

6. It has no real value for me.

7. They had many subjects last term.

8. At the end of the 18<sup>th</sup> century the USA had a population of about 3 million people.

9. We will have 5 exams next term.

10. In the nearest future this party will have a majority in our Parliament.

**Ex. 4. Fill in blanks with the suitable form of the verb 'to have'.**

1. We usually \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at 9 o'clock.
2. This teacher \_\_\_\_\_ two lectures every day.
3. Our University library \_\_\_\_\_ a big specialized book collection.
4. Now his parents \_\_\_\_\_ a nice house in the country.
5. Yesterday they \_\_\_\_\_ no lecture on physics.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ no time to visit you last week.
7. Two days ago we \_\_\_\_\_ a very interesting talk with Prof. D.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting tomorrow.
9. Next year our students \_\_\_\_\_ practical training at industrial enterprises of our city.
10. I hope I \_\_\_\_\_ more free time in a couple of days.

**REMEMBER!!!**

to have dinner / breakfast – обедать, завтракать  
to have tea / coffee, etc. – пить чай, кофе и т.д.  
to have a bath / a shower – принять ванну, душ  
to have a shave / a wash – побриться, помыться  
to have a rest / a sleep / a dream, etc. – отдохнуть, поспать, помечтать и т.д.  
to have a holiday / a good time, etc. – отдохнуть, хорошо провести время и т.д.

**Ex. 5. Make up 3-5 sentences with the above mentioned set-expressions.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

**2.4. Выражение 'have got'**

Глагол **'to have'** может употребляться наравне с выражением **'to have got'**, которое имеет тоже лексическое значение, но является разговорной формой:

**;HAVE = HAVE GOT!**

*They've got savings in the bank. – У них **есть** сбережения в банке.*

Вопросительная и отрицательная формы выражения **'to have got'** образуется по правилам завершённой группы времен (см. тема 14.3. Времена завершённой группы):

***Have** you **got** any classes to day? – Yes, I **have**. (No, I **haven't**.)  
I **haven't got** any classes today.*

## Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 6. Here's Bob's timetable. Write 10 sentences beginning with "He has got... / He doesn't have...".**

**Model:** Bob has got High Maths at 8:15 o'clock on Monday.  
He doesn't have French on Wednesday.

	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
8:15 – 9:35	High Maths	Introduction to the speciality	Statistics	High Maths	English
9:45 – 11:05	Drawing	Physical Training	English	Physics	Drawing
11:15 – 12:35	English	High Maths	Sociology	History	High Maths
13:00 – 14:20	Physics	Economics	Strength of Materials	Study of Culture	Chemistry
14:30 – 15:50	Chemistry	Philosophy	High Maths	Russian	Physical Training

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Translate into English.**

1. У меня нет её адреса. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. У него был вчера очень интересный разговор с профессором Д. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. У них есть очень интересные книги по радиоэлектронике. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Мы должны будем пойти туда еще раз. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. У вас завтра будет собрание. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Я должна вставать теперь очень рано. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. Вы вчера обедали в ресторане? – \_\_\_\_\_  
8. Есть ли у вас красный карандаш? – \_\_\_\_\_  
9. У меня не было времени навестить его вчера. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

10. Нужно ли вам идти в библиотеку сегодня? – \_\_\_\_\_

---

11. Вы должны усердно учиться, чтобы получить высшее образование. – \_\_\_\_\_

### Обзорные упражнения [1, с. 386]

#### ***Ex. 8. Translate into Russian.***

1. Never spend money before you have it.
2. Nothing venture nothing have.
3. They have had to have many assistants.
4. Overdocumentation has two dangers.
5. We may have the systems produce the same result.
6. The student will have five exams and seven final tests this examination period.
7. A computer has only one monitor.
8. Much will have more.
9. The scheme has the disadvantage of usage.
10. Some important issues have not any description.
11. One part of the organization has control over and responsibility for documentation.
12. Minus one has no square root.
13. The chemist is often anxious to have the first type of information.
14. The library had an excellent subject catalogue.
15. He had perfect knowledge of all the aspects of the situation.
16. These factors had to be taken into account.
17. He had only himself to thank.
18. He had led me to believe that.
19. It is better to have loved and lost than never to have loved at all.  
(A. Tennyson)
20. Recent experiment has produced conflicting results.

### **ТЕМА 3. ОБОРОТ 'THERE + TO BE' (THE CONSTRUCTION 'THERE + TO BE')**

Оборот **'there + to be'** переводится *быть, находиться, существовать*, употребляется для выражения наличия (или отсутствия) в определенном месте еще неизвестного лица или предмета. Данный оборот стоит в



начале предложения, за ним следует подлежащее, выраженное существительным.

1. Если в предложении с оборотом **‘there + to be’** имеется обстоятельство места, то перевод начинается с этого обстоятельства:

*There is a magazine on the desk.* – *На письменном столе есть (лежит) журнал.*

2. При отсутствии обстоятельства места перевод предложения начинается с самого оборота:

*There are different kinds of vessels.* – *Имеются (существуют) различные типы судов.*

3. В обороте **‘there + to be’** вместо глагола **‘to be’** могут употребляться глаголы: **to stand, to exist, to hang, to live** и др.:

*There exist many types of cargoes.* – *Существует много типов грузов.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Put the sentences into the Past Indefinite and the Future Indefinite Tenses.**

1. There is a big scientific library at our University. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. There is a telephone in this room. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. There are many children there. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. There is a concert in the concert hall. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. There is a book-shop in this street. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. There are many pictures on the wall. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. How many students are there in your group? – \_\_\_\_\_

8. There are many foreign books in this library. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. There is nobody at home. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. There are 15 sentences in this exercise. – \_\_\_\_\_

11. There is a beautiful garden near our house. – \_\_\_\_\_

12. There is no theatre in our city. – \_\_\_\_\_

13. There is a new department-store in the centre of the city. – \_\_\_\_\_

14. There are some mistakes in my work. – \_\_\_\_\_

15. There are many plants and factories in our region. – \_\_\_\_\_

## Образование вопросительных и отрицательных форм

Вопросительная форма образуется с помощью соответствующей формы глагола **'to be'**, которая ставится перед **'there'**:

*Are there many types of ships? – Yes, **there are**. (No, **there aren't**.)*

Отрицательная форма образуется с помощью отрицательной частицы **not**, которая ставится сразу же после глагола **'to be'**:

*There **isn't** much fuel in the tank.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

*Ex. 2. Put the sentences into interrogative and negative forms.*

1. There is a difference between these two departments. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. There are many scientific workers at our University. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. There was only a primary school at our village 10 years ago. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. There were many industrial enterprises in our city in the past. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. There will be a new computing centre at our faculty. – \_\_\_\_\_

### Обзорные упражнения

*Ex. 3. Translate the sentences paying attention to the different forms of the construction **'there + to be'**.*

1. There are many interesting articles in this journal.
2. There are 10 students in our group.
3. There are two windows in my room.
4. There are no mistakes in your test-paper.
5. There is some bread and some butter on the table.
6. There is a post-office in this street.
7. There is a Computing centre at every faculty of our University.
8. There will be a telephone in this room in several days.
9. There were many people in the room when I came in.
10. There was nobody there.
11. There will be a new department at our University next year.
12. There was no time left.
13. There is no sense to waste time talking about it.
14. There was a great difference between them.
15. There are different ways of making this experiment.

16. There were two other reasons for the use of such a device.  
17. There will be many problems to be discussed.  
18. There will be some weak points in his proposal, but we hope to iron out the differences.  
19. There are different forms of energy and there are many methods of converting it from one kind into another.  
20. There was nothing to be done as there were no means to change the situation; there will be hardly any changes in future.

**Ex. 4. Translate from Russian into English.**

1. В этом журнале много интересных статей. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
2. В нашем городе много музеев и театров. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
3. В этой комнате есть телефон? – \_\_\_\_\_  
4. В этой комнате два окна. – \_\_\_\_\_  
5. В чашке не было чая. – \_\_\_\_\_  
6. – Сколько статей было в этом журнале? – Там было несколько статей. – \_\_\_\_\_  
7. – Сколько студентов в аудитории? – Двадцать. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
8. Рядом с нашим домом будет парк. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
9. На этой улице была школа? – \_\_\_\_\_  
10. На столе лежит несколько книг. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. a) Compare two sentences.**

На стене висит картина. – There is a picture on the wall.  
Фотографии семьи висят на стене. – The family pictures are on the wall.

**b) Translate the following sentences using the construction 'there + to be' and the verb 'to be' in suitable tense forms.**

1. Рядом с нашим домом есть школа. Школа находится рядом с нашим домом. – \_\_\_\_\_  
2. В городе несколько театров. Театры находятся в центре города. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
3. В вазе стояли цветы. Цветы стояли в красивой вазе. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
4. В театре много детей. Дети сейчас в театре. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. Существует несколько способов решения этой задачи. Способы решения этой задачи приведены на странице 5. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

**Ex. 6. Translate into Russian.**

1. There is an assumption underlying all moral estimates.
2. There is no end to evolutionary process.
3. There are no necessary one to one relationships between the elements on these levels of description.
4. Is there any new evidence available as to these reactions?
5. There has been a renewed interest in this technique in recent years.
6. There will never be a set of processes which are waiting for each other.
7. How many solutions of the problem are there?
8. Is there any difference between the canons of deduction and induction?
9. There is hardly any chance of there being a mistake in these calculations.
10. There were various reasons, internal as well as external, to account for the actions.
11. There are not many formal results concerning path testing.
12. There was not a single man who could decipher the inscription.
13. Was there any way out?
14. Is there anyone so wise as to learn by experience of others? (*F. Voltair*)
15. What is there in the drying chamber?

## **ТЕМА 4. АРТИКЛЬ (THE ARTICLE)<sup>1</sup>**

Артикль является одним из определителей имени существительного и ставится перед существительным или перед словами, являющимися определениями к нему.

### **4.1. Неопределенный артикль (The Indefinite Article)**

Неопределенный артикль ‘a’ (‘an’ – перед словами, начинающимися с гласной) происходит от числительного ‘one’ и означает *один из многих, какой-то, любой*:

*I am a student.* – Я студент (*один из многих*).

*He is an English engineer.* – Он английский инженер.

Если перед существительным в единственном числе стоит неопределенный артикль, то во множественном числе он опускается:

*This is a book.* – *These are books.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Текст составлен по материалам книги: Экономакис Э., Жуковский А. Артикли. СПб.: ООО ИПЦ «КАРО», 2008. С. 33.

Иногда артикль ‘a’ (‘an’) переводится словом *один*:

*in a month* – через (*один*) месяц.

Неопределенный артикль употребляется в устойчивых выражениях:

*in a hurry* – в спешке; *it's a pity* – жаль;  
*it's a shame* – стыдно, жалко; *it's a pleasure* – приятно;  
*to have a good time* – хорошо провести время.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Insert the indefinite article where necessary.**

1. Excuse me! Is there \_\_\_\_\_ drug store nearby?
2. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ light?
3. Could you change \_\_\_\_\_ pound for me?
4. I need to make \_\_\_\_\_ phone call.
5. Would you mind if I made \_\_\_\_\_ quick call?
6. Could you do me \_\_\_\_\_ favor?
7. Have you got \_\_\_\_\_ few minutes?
8. It's \_\_\_\_\_ present. Could you gift-wrap it, please?
9. Could you give me \_\_\_\_\_ hand? These bags are too heavy.
10. Do you have access to \_\_\_\_\_ computer?
11. – Are you tired? – Not \_\_\_\_\_ bit.
12. Did you have \_\_\_\_\_ pleasant flight?
13. I want to buy \_\_\_\_\_ present for my son.
14. Would you like to get \_\_\_\_\_ bite to eat??
15. I could eat \_\_\_\_\_ horse.
16. I'm as hungry as \_\_\_\_\_ wolf.

### 4.2. Определенный артикль (The Definite Article)

Определенный артикль ‘the’ переводится словами *этот, эта, это, эти*. Употребляется перед существительными как в единственном, так и во множественном числе.

Определенный артикль употребляется:

1. Когда речь идет об определенном лице или предмете:

*Where is **the** professor?* – Где профессор? (*известный нам*)

2. Перед существительным, если ему предшествует прилагательное в превосходной степени или порядковое числительное:

*The Moscow Metro is **the** longest in Russia.* – Московское метро – самое протяженное в России.

***The** first examination will be in mathematics.* – Первый экзамен будет по математике.

3. Перед географическими названиями (названиями океанов, морей, рек, горных хребтов, частей света и т.д.):

***the Pacific** – Тихий океан;*

***the Volga** – Волга;*

***the Black Sea** – Черное море;*

***the Urals** – Уральские горы;*

***the North** – север;*

***the South** – юг.*

4. Перед названиями ряда стран и местностей (с определяемыми словами – States, Federation, Republic и т.д.):

***the United States of America** – Соединенные Штаты Америки;*

***the Crimea** – Крым.*

5. Перед существительными, единственными в своем роде:

***the Sun** – солнце;*

***the Moon** – луна.*

6. Перед фамилиями, употребленными во множественном числе для обозначения членов одной и той же семьи:

***the Petrovs** – Петровы;*

***the Hutts** – семья Хамтов.*

7. В устойчивых выражениях:

*in **the morning** – утром;*

*in **the evening** – вечером;*

*to keep **the house** – сидеть дома;*

*to tell **the truth** – говорить правду;*

*in **the afternoon** (in **the day-time**) – днем;*

*to play **the piano** – играть на пианино.*

Определенный артикль **не употребляется**:

1. Перед именами собственными:

*England, St. Petersburg, London, Smith, Petrov.*

2. Перед названиями времен года, месяцев и дней недели:

*We have our exam periods in winter and in summer. – У нас сессии зимой и летом.*

*English classes are on Monday. – Занятия по английскому языку состоятся в понедельник.*

3. В устойчивых выражениях:

*from morning till night – с утра до вечера;*

*by chance – случайно;*

*from head to foot – с головы до ног;*

*by sea – морем;*

*at first sight – с первого взгляда;*

*for hours – часами;*

*to play football – играть в футбол;*

*on deck – на палубе.*

## Тренировочные упражнения

### **Ex. 2. Insert the definite article if necessary.**

1. Do you often go out in \_\_\_\_\_ evenings?
2. We're going to \_\_\_\_\_ cinema.
3. Could you turn \_\_\_\_\_ television down, please?
4. Could I have \_\_\_\_\_ receipt, please?
5. By the way, what did you do on \_\_\_\_\_ weekend?
6. Will you come along with us to \_\_\_\_\_ theater?
7. What's \_\_\_\_\_ difference?
8. Could you put a word for me at \_\_\_\_\_ meeting?
9. Did you raise \_\_\_\_\_ question of \_\_\_\_\_ salary increase?
10. Could you turn \_\_\_\_\_ radio up, please?
11. Where did \_\_\_\_\_ crime take place?
12. Would you mind if I open \_\_\_\_\_ window?
13. Waiter, could I have \_\_\_\_\_ check (bill), please?
14. Keep \_\_\_\_\_ change.
15. Please pass \_\_\_\_\_ salt.

### **4.3. Употребление артиклей с именами**

Можно ли использовать артикли с именами людей? В школе на уроках английского нам говорили, что этого ни в коем случае нельзя делать. Однако на самом деле это не совсем так.

В английском языке есть ряд случаев, в которых определенные и неопределенные артикли очень даже *можно и нужно* использовать с именами людей.

Но сначала повторим несколько общих правил, касающихся имен, фамилий, кличек, титулов и названий должностей:

1. *Имена.* Да, как правило, артикли не употребляются с именами, фамилиями, прозвищами и кличками домашних животных:

*My name is Bond. James Bond. I'm Joseph. People call me Joey.*

*My given name is Benjamin Buford Blue, but people call me "Bubba".*

2. *Титулы, звания, должности* вместе с именем тоже используется без артикля:

*Queen Elizabeth;*

*President Putin;*

*Senator Kennedy;*

*Governor Schwarzenegger;*

*King Henry VIII;*

*Lieutenant Nelson;*

*Captain Jack Sparrow;*

*Rector Dmitriev.*

3. *Титулы, звания, должности* и тому подобное без имени употребляются с определённым артиклем:

*the Queen of England;  
the President of the United States;  
the Prime Minister;  
the governor;  
the professor;  
the inspector;*

*the Princess of Wales;  
the Chancellor of Germany;  
the senator;  
the mayor;  
the managing director;  
the rector.*

Хотя после таких глаголов, как **‘to become’, ‘to elect’, ‘to appoint’** определенный артикль часто опускается.

Сравните:

**The CEO** personally congratulated me on my appointment. – *Генеральный директор* лично поздравил меня с назначением (на должность).

Dieter Zetsche became **Chairman** of the Board of Directors of Daimler AG in 2006. – В 2006 Дитер Цэтше стал *председателем* Совета директоров компании Даймлер.

Last year he was appointed **director** of the art museum. – В прошлом году его назначили *директором* художественного музея.

4. Определенный артикль **‘the’** с именами используется в значении *тот, тот самый*, как, например, в песне “I feel pretty” из мюзикла “West Side Story”:

*This is not **the** Maria we know.* – *Это не **та** Мария, которую мы знаем.*  
Или:

***The** Tracey I knew five years ago turned into a cynical bitch.* – *(Та самая) Трейси, которую я знала пять лет назад, превратилась в циничную стерву.*

5. Неопределённый артикль **‘a’** с именами используется в значении *некий*.

*There is **a** John Atkinson came to visit you.* – *К вам пришел **некий** Джон Аткинсон.*

*A Patricia Clingman called and was particularly interested in you. Do you know her?* – ***Некая** Патриция Клингман звонила и интересовалась тобой. Ты знаешь такую?*

### Тренировочные упражнения [7, с. 151]

#### Ex. 3. Correct mistakes if any.

1. Duke of York left county of Yorkshire. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Mayor of Moscow is Sergey Sabjanin. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. The Lord Cromwell was a very famous person. – \_\_\_\_\_



4. The Captain Cook was eaten by aborigines. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. Colonel gave an order to his soldiers. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. King arrived late. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. The King Edward was fifth son in royal family. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. Queen is vacationing in the Italian Riviera. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. Prime Minister is ill. – \_\_\_\_\_

### Обзорные упражнения

**Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks with the articles if necessary.**

1. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ bed. I've got \_\_\_\_\_ headache.
2. Their son has two dogs and \_\_\_\_\_ bird.
3. We live on \_\_\_\_\_ bank of \_\_\_\_\_ Amur.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Moscow is \_\_\_\_\_ capital of \_\_\_\_\_ Russian Federation.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Russia is our native country.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ captain always stays on \_\_\_\_\_ deck when \_\_\_\_\_ ship leaves \_\_\_\_\_ port.
7. There is \_\_\_\_\_ bridge over \_\_\_\_\_ river.
8. I saw \_\_\_\_\_ very nice girl yesterday.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ lake Baikal is \_\_\_\_\_ biggest lake all over \_\_\_\_\_ global.
10. I am \_\_\_\_\_ first-year student.

**Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with the articles 'a', 'the' or 'zero' article.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Thames flows though London.
2. Freda's \_\_\_\_\_ astronaut. There are six of them on this mission.
3. There is \_\_\_\_\_ good chance we'll be late for the train.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Coca-cola is enjoyed all over the world.
5. We're having dinner with \_\_\_\_\_ Smiths at the weekend.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
7. He was \_\_\_\_\_ only person to disagree.
8. I have \_\_\_\_\_ appointment at the dentist's this afternoon.
9. Bats and owls generally hunt at \_\_\_\_\_ night.
10. Many people were waiting for more information about the accident in \_\_\_\_\_ Swiss Alps.
11. He knows \_\_\_\_\_ history of French Revolution well.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Tower of London is a popular tourist attraction.
13. Last year we went to \_\_\_\_\_ Greece.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ book you gave me is very interesting.
15. They went for a stroll around \_\_\_\_\_ St. James' Park.
16. Here's \_\_\_\_\_ book you asked to borrow.
17. \_\_\_\_\_ large steel bridge joins the two banks of the river.

18. There will be \_\_\_\_\_ delay of at least six weeks in the delivery of your order.

19. The National Health Service provides the majority of healthcare in \_\_\_\_\_ UK.

20. That picture is \_\_\_\_\_ real work of art.

21. We may be going skiing at \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas, but it's still all up in the air.

22. Jeff comes from a small town in \_\_\_\_\_ Texas.

23. There are three chairs and \_\_\_\_\_ armchair in the room.

24. A lot of teenagers enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ computer games.

25. \_\_\_\_\_ bananas are a good source of energy.

26. Newcastle is a town in \_\_\_\_\_ north of England.

27. I applied for \_\_\_\_\_ job last week.

28. \_\_\_\_\_ Americans are keen to win the race to send human beings to Mars.

29. Alan's father is furious because he has had \_\_\_\_\_ accident with his new car.

30. Mark Twain said: "When in doubt tell \_\_\_\_\_ truth".

31. It's rather dark in here. Could you switch on \_\_\_\_\_ light?

32. She is going to see her daughter who has come from \_\_\_\_\_ Canada.

33. A thermometer is \_\_\_\_\_ instrument for measuring the temperature.

34. I often listen to \_\_\_\_\_ radio.

35. It's \_\_\_\_\_ good idea to go for a walk.

36. Twice a month we play \_\_\_\_\_ match in another town.

37. In \_\_\_\_\_ centre of the town you can find a lot of shops selling nice clothes.

38. The oldest living tree in the world grows in \_\_\_\_\_ California.

39. We went for a walk along \_\_\_\_\_ coast.

**Ex. 6. Translate into English.**

1. Прошлым летом мы жили в деревне, расположенной на берегу Амура, в маленьком домике, окруженном большим садом. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. Дом, в котором мы жили летом, был окружен большим садом. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. Вчера я разговаривал с человеком, который провел несколько лет в Лондоне. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. Я не помню цифр, которые он упомянул в своем докладе. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. В своем докладе он упомянул цифры, которые ясно иллюстрируют быстрое развитие нашей тяжелой промышленности. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. Человек, который хочет овладеть иностранным языком, должен работать очень усердно и систематически. — \_\_\_\_\_

7. Документы, указывающие количество, род и вес груза, отправленного из Киева, получены банком. — \_\_\_\_\_

8. Я только что перевел рассказ, который мне очень понравился. — \_\_\_\_\_

9. Рассказ, который я только что прочел, мне очень понравился. — \_\_\_\_\_

10. Вчера я разговаривал с директором, который сказал мне, что он поможет мне в этом деле. — \_\_\_\_\_

11. Люди, которые занимаются физкультурой, обычно очень здоровые. — \_\_\_\_\_

12. Пароход, специально построенный для прокладывания пути сквозь льды, называется ледоколом. — \_\_\_\_\_

13. Дом, который строится на нашей улице, будет одним из самых высоких домов в Новокузнецке. — \_\_\_\_\_

14. В прошлом году, когда я был на Кавказе, я познакомился с одним писателем. — \_\_\_\_\_

15. Писатель, который был высокообразованным человеком и много путешествовал по России, часто рассказывал студентам о жизни людей в различных частях нашей страны. — \_\_\_\_\_

16. Образование в Российской Федерации гарантировано Конституцией. — \_\_\_\_\_

## ТЕМА 5. ИМЯ СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE NOUN)

Имя существительное — это название лица (**designer** — *конструктор*), предмета (**design** — *проект*), явления (**light** — *свет*) или процесса (**development** — *развитие*).

Род существительного в английском языке, в отличие от русского, определяется только по значению существительного.

Название лица мужского пола относится к мужскому роду; вместо него употребляется местоимение **'he'**.

Название лица женского пола относится к женскому роду; вместо него употребляется местоимение **'she'**.

Название неодушевленного предмета относится к среднему роду; вместо него употребляется местоимение **'it'**.

*This is a door. **It** is white. – Это дверь. **Она** белая.*

*This is a table. **It** is big. – Это стол. **Он** большой.*

*This is the Sun. **It** is hot. – Это солнце. **Оно** горячее.*

### 5.1. Исчисляемые и неисчисляемые существительные (The Count and Non-count Nouns)

К **исчисляемым** существительным относятся названия предметов и лиц, которые можно пересчитать, поэтому они употребляются как в единственном, так и во множественном числе:

*a room (комната) – two rooms; a worker (рабочий) – many workers.*

К **неисчисляемым** существительным относятся названия предметов, которые не подлежат счету. Они употребляются только в единственном числе и без артикля:

– вещественные существительные: **steel** – *сталь*, **oil** – *нефть*, **air** – *воздух* и др.;

– отвлеченные существительные, обозначающие состояния, действия, науки, процессы и т.п.: **freedom** – *свобода*, **labour** – *труд*, **mathematics** – *математика* и др.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Divide into the count nouns and non-count nouns.**

Snow, mistake, salt, water, friend, house, meat, jam, furniture, glass, money, book, advice, room, ball.

**Ex. 2. Compare the sentences and choose the right ones. Write down 'right' or 'wrong' opposite each sentence.**

1. He gave me a good advice. – \_\_\_\_\_

He gave me good advice. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. He has good information about which hotels to stay in. – \_\_\_\_\_

He has a good information about which hotels to stay in. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. He leaves for a work at 8:30 a.m. – \_\_\_\_\_

He leaves for work at 8:30 a.m. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. It's nice weather. – \_\_\_\_\_

It's a nice weather. – \_\_\_\_\_

## 5.2. Число существительных (The Number)

Множественное (the plural) число существительных образуется путем прибавления окончания **-s** или **-es** к форме единственного числа (табл. 5.1).

Таблица 5.1

### Образование множественного числа существительных

Правила	Примеры
Существительные образуют множественное число прибавлением окончания <b>-s</b> к форме единственного числа	scientist – scientists, science – sciences, day – days, radio – radios
Существительные, оканчивающиеся на свистящий или шипящий звук, принимают окончание <b>-es</b>	class – classes, box – boxes, match – matches
В существительных, оканчивающихся на <b>-y</b> с предшествующей согласной, <b>y</b> переходит в <b>i</b> и прибавляется окончание <b>-es</b>	city – cities, library – libraries, <i>no</i> key – keys, play – plays
Существительные, оканчивающиеся на <b>-o</b> с предшествующей согласной, принимают окончание <b>-es</b>	negro – negroes, tomato – tomatoes <i>no</i> piano – pianos
В существительных, оканчивающихся на <b>-f</b> или <b>-fe</b> , <b>f</b> обычно переходит в <b>v</b> и прибавляется окончание <b>-es</b>	leaf – leaves, life – lives, <i>no</i> roof – roofs
Существительные, заимствованные из греческого и латинского языков, сохранили форму множественного числа этих языков	basis – bases, crisis – crises, datum – data, phenomenon – phenomena
Некоторые существительные латинского происхождения имеют две формы множественного числа	medium – media – mediums, memorandum – memoranda – memorandums
Несколько существительных сохранили древнюю форму образования множественного числа и являются исключениями	man – men, woman – women, child – children, tooth – teeth, foot – feet
Сложные имена существительные образуют множественное число путем добавления окончания к основному слову	sister-in-law – sisters-in-law, editor-in-chief – editors-in-chief, carpet-sweeper – carpet-sweepers

## Тренировочные упражнения

### *Ex. 3. Put the nouns into the plural.*

pen – _____	window – _____	wall – _____
week – _____	ship – _____	library – _____
clock – _____	watch – _____	dress – _____
country – _____	glass – _____	play – _____
bus – _____	leaf – _____	life – _____
colony – _____	hero – _____	fox – _____
language – _____	shelf – _____	roof – _____
ray – _____	bush – _____	copy – _____
brush – _____	fox – _____	dictionary – _____
factory – _____	mouse – _____	foot – _____
tooth – _____	man – _____	woman – _____
child – _____	postman – _____	schoolgirl – _____
text-book – _____	phenomenon – _____	nucleus – _____
datum – _____	basis – _____	comedy – _____
quantity – _____	discovery – _____	date – _____

### *Ex. 4. Translate the sentences paying attention to the nouns in the single and in the plural.*

1. My friend works at the factory. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. My friends work at the factory. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. The students of our Academy study many subjects. – \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
4. This student studies English at Moscow University. – \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
5. The teacher wants to ask you some questions. – \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
6. At the English lessons we read many texts. – \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
7. The Parliament of the country passes new laws. – \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
8. Knowledge is power. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. Bad news doesn't make people happy. – \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
10. The scientist is always busy with his experiments. – \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

### *Ex. 5. Put the sentences into the plural.*

1. He is a student of our University. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Put the box on the shelf. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. Where is the English dictionary? – \_\_\_\_\_
4. This factory has a good laboratory. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. The speech was very long. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. This story is very interesting. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. I don't like this play. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. The roof of the house was covered with snow. – \_\_\_\_\_

- 
9. The key to the box was lost. – \_\_\_\_\_
  10. I need a new copy of the letter. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Translate the sentences from Russian into English.**

1. Этот завод производит корабли. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Копии документов находятся в файле компьютера. – \_\_\_\_\_

- 
3. На столе лежат полученные данные. – \_\_\_\_\_
  4. В этой комнате два окна. – \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Дети играют в саду каждый день. – \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Сколько статей было в этих журналах? – \_\_\_\_\_

- 
7. В парке гуляли женщины с детьми. – \_\_\_\_\_

- 
8. В музее висят картины Веласкеса. – \_\_\_\_\_

- 
9. Осень. На земле лежат красные и желтые листья. – \_\_\_\_\_

- 
10. У наших детей много друзей. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Translate the sentences with words formed with the exception to the rule.**

1. Women and children can easily do this work. – \_\_\_\_\_

- 
2. I have bad teeth. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. I have hurt both feet. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. Input data are fed into the computer. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. We can't explain these phenomena. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. Political and economic crises form the basis for social conflicts. – \_\_\_\_\_

- 
7. What criteria did they establish? – \_\_\_\_\_

8. Atom nuclei are invisible to the naked eye. – \_\_\_\_\_

- 
9. Postmen deliver newspapers in the morning. – \_\_\_\_\_
-

10. These formulae are difficult to explain. – \_\_\_\_\_

### 5.3. Падеж имен существительных (The Case)

В английском языке два падежа: общий и притяжательный.

**Общий падеж (the Common Case)** не имеет специальных окончаний: **an example** – *пример*, **drawings** – *чертежи*, **data** – *данные*.

Существительное в общем падеже может переводиться на русский язык разными падежами в зависимости от его функции в предложении. Функция существительного определяется:

- его местом в предложении;
- наличием перед ним предлогов **of, to, by, with, about**.

Подлежащее, выраженное одним словом (или группой слов) без предлога, стоит перед сказуемым и соответствует русскому именительному падежу (*кто? что?*).

*The lecturer sees the students.* – *Лектор видит студентов.*

Прямое дополнение, выраженное существительным без предлога, стоит после сказуемого и соответствует русскому винительному падежу (*кого? что?*).

*The students see the lecturer.* – *Студенты видят лектора.*

В табл. 5.2 приведены примеры сравнений падежных отношений в русском и английском языках.

Таблица 5.2

Сравнения падежных отношений в русском и английском языках

Падеж	В русском языке	В английском языке	Собственное лексическое значение предлогов
<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>
И.п.	(кто? что?) <i>друг</i>	Нет предлога. Место – перед сказуемым. <i>My friend met me</i>	
Р.п.	(кого? чего?) <i>друга</i>	<i>of</i> <i>The book of friend</i>	<i>of</i> – <i>из</i> <i>one of them</i> – один <i>из</i> них <i>is made of glass</i> – сделан <i>из</i> стекла
Д.п.	(кому? чему?) <i>другу</i>	<i>to</i> <i>I often write to my friend</i>	<i>to</i> – указывает направление <i>to the plant</i> – <i>на</i> завод <i>to Moscow</i> – <i>в</i> Москву



Продолжение табл. 5.2

1	2	3	4
В.п.	(кого? что?) <i>друга</i>	Нет предлога. Место – после сказуемого. I met my friend	
Т.п.	(кем? чем?) <i>другом</i>	<b>by</b> The work is done by my friend.  <b>with</b> (с неодушевленными предметами) I write with a pen	<b>by</b> – у, к, <i>посредством</i> by the window – у окна by summer – к лету by radio – <i>посредством</i> (no) радио  <b>with</b> – с with my friend – с моим другом
П.п.	(о ком? о чем?) <i>о друге</i>	<b>about</b> – о, <b>of</b> – о I often think about (of) my friend	<b>about</b> – около, <i>приблизительно</i> About 45 students are pre- sent at the lecture. – На лекции присутствует око- ло 45 студентов

### Тренировочные упражнения

#### Ex. 8. Insert the proper preposition where necessary.

1. I lived in London for five years from 1980 \_\_\_\_\_ 1985.
2. We'll begin \_\_\_\_ the solution of the present-day problems of our enterprise.
3. A big pool \_\_\_\_\_ oil from a tanker has caused an ecological problem.
4. Many people today are worried \_\_\_\_\_ global warming.
5. My father has never been \_\_\_\_\_ London.
6. The Pyramids were built \_\_\_\_\_ people who lived a long time ago.

### 5.4. Притяжательный падеж имен существительных

**Притяжательный падеж (the Possessive Case)** обозначает принадлежность предмета или лица и отвечает на вопрос **'whose'** (*чей*). Существительное в притяжательном падеже является определением к другому существительному и всегда стоит перед ним. Существительное в притяжательном падеже имеет окончание:

– **'s** (апостроф и буква **s**) в единственном числе:

our **teacher's** lectures – лекции нашего *преподавателя*;

– ’ (только апостроф) во множественном числе:

the **students’** drawings – чертежи *студентов*.

**Примечание.** Если существительное во множественном числе не имеет окончания **-s**, прибавляется **’-s**:

the **children’s** pictures – рисунки этих *детей*.

Притяжательный падеж в основном употребляется с одушевленными существительными, однако он может употребляться и с некоторыми неодушевленными, например:

the **sun’s** rays – *солнечные лучи* (лучи солнца);

the **country’s** economy – *экономика страны*.

Существительное в притяжательном падеже переводится на русский язык либо соответствующим прилагательным, либо существительным в родительном падеже.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 9. Translate the word-combinations in the possessive case.**

my brother’s favourite sport – \_\_\_\_\_

that man’s name – \_\_\_\_\_

University’s computer center – \_\_\_\_\_

the deputies’ reports – \_\_\_\_\_

the People’s Militia – \_\_\_\_\_

the peoples’ fight for their liberation – \_\_\_\_\_

the scientist’s work – \_\_\_\_\_

these two countries’ economy – \_\_\_\_\_

those women’s children – \_\_\_\_\_

children’s parents – \_\_\_\_\_

people’s rights and duties – \_\_\_\_\_

two months’ program – \_\_\_\_\_

scientists’ work – \_\_\_\_\_

the dean’s office – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 10. Change according to the model.**

**Model:** the ball of the boy – the boy’s ball

the new club of the workers – \_\_\_\_\_

the watch of my friend Peter – \_\_\_\_\_

the parents of all the other boys – \_\_\_\_\_

the opinion of the lawyer – \_\_\_\_\_

the house of Mr. Brown – \_\_\_\_\_

the surname of Helen and Peter – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the times of Peter the Great – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the clothes of the boys – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the voice of his sister – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the birthday of my daughter Helen – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the boats of the fishermen – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the conclusion of experts – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the books of his grandchildren – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 11. Do as in the model.**

**Model:** Magellan's ships – the ships of Magellan

my father's library – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the doctor's advice – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the engineer's drawings – \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mr. Green's proposal – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the captain's order – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the directors' Council – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the teacher's questions – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the ship's crew – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the managers' instructions – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the lawyer's signature – \_\_\_\_\_  
 the director's decision – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 12. Translate the sentences with the nouns in the possessive case.**

1. My father's parents are my grandparents.
2. His granddaughter's dream is to become a pianist.
3. Nobody could explain the young girl's behaviour.
4. The young man got his first month's salary and looked very proud.
5. You don't object to the speaker's proposal, do you?
6. The boy was looking through a children's magazine.
7. After an hour's break the committee resumed their work.
8. It was a typical student's mistake.
9. The river was at a mile's distance from the camp.
10. We couldn't tear our eyes off the pianist's hands.

## 5.5. Существительное в функции определения

Для английского языка характерно употребление в роли определения одного или нескольких существительных (в общем падеже), образующих цепочку слов. В такой цепочке последнее существительное является основным, а все предшествующие ему слова являются определениями к нему.

Существительное в функции определения переводится:

– прилагательным:

*room temperature* – **комнатная** температура;

*limit pressure* – **предельное** давление;

– существительным без предлога или с предлогом:

*a physics teacher* – преподаватель **физики**;

*the institute radio equipment laboratory* – **институтская** лаборатория радиооборудования;

*the atomic energy conference* – конференция **по проблемам атомной энергии**.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 13. Translate the following word-combinations:**

trade talks – \_\_\_\_\_

long-term credits – \_\_\_\_\_

world market conditions – \_\_\_\_\_

world copper supply and demand – \_\_\_\_\_

post Second-World-War prices – \_\_\_\_\_

UN member states – \_\_\_\_\_

an anniversary meeting – \_\_\_\_\_

the energy accumulation process – \_\_\_\_\_

the long-term research program result – \_\_\_\_\_

consumer goods – \_\_\_\_\_

power station equipment – \_\_\_\_\_

home and foreign policy – \_\_\_\_\_

London Metal Exchange copper price – \_\_\_\_\_

the Public Health Ministry – \_\_\_\_\_

labour council – \_\_\_\_\_

crime prevention problems – \_\_\_\_\_

the railway bridge reconstruction plan – \_\_\_\_\_

the temperature limit determination problem – \_\_\_\_\_

---

low-temperature physics development – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 14. Translate into English.**

1. Летом мы едим много фруктов. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. Его волосы совсем темные. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. Я купил эти часы в Санкт-Петербурге. Они очень хорошие. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

4. Я не мог войти в сад, так как ворота были закрыты. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
5. Эти новости очень интересные. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ваши советы мне очень помогли сегодня. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
7. Кому принадлежат эти деньги? – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Он сделал большие успехи в английском языке. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
9. В этом году овощи очень дешевые. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
10. Санки стоят у ворот. – \_\_\_\_\_
11. Его одежда совсем новая. – \_\_\_\_\_
12. Его заработная плата очень высокая. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
13. Недалеко отсюда находится стекольный завод. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
14. Товар только что прибыл. – \_\_\_\_\_
15. Экспорт этого товара значительно увеличился. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
16. Содержание его письма было совсем неожиданным. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
17. В этой статье вы найдете данные по экспорту и импорту Италии за последние три месяца. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
18. Фирма сообщает, что на экспорт этого товара требуется лицензия. – \_\_\_\_\_
19. Мы получили важные сведения о положении рынка нефти. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
20. Дверь комнаты закрыта. – \_\_\_\_\_
21. Дайте этот словарь студенту. – \_\_\_\_\_
22. Я выпил стакан молока. – \_\_\_\_\_
23. Этот дом был построен известным архитектором. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
24. Разрежьте бумагу ножом. – \_\_\_\_\_
25. Письмо было подписано директором. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
26. Я вымыл лицо теплой водой. – \_\_\_\_\_
27. Он послал телеграмму своему другу. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
28. Покажите это письмо декану. – \_\_\_\_\_
29. Знаете ли вы адрес Иванова? – \_\_\_\_\_
30. Есть ли у вас карта Европы? – \_\_\_\_\_

31. Рабочий день моего брата начинается в 9 часов утра. – \_\_\_\_\_
32. Вы спросили мнение врача? – \_\_\_\_\_
33. Сестра жены моего брата работает на судостроительном заводе. – \_\_\_\_\_
34. Муж моей сестры Елены уехал в Хабаровск. – \_\_\_\_\_
35. Мы еще не получили ответа покупателей. – \_\_\_\_\_
36. Они сообщили нам о прибытии парохода. – \_\_\_\_\_
37. Матросы немедленно выполнили приказание капитана. – \_\_\_\_\_
38. Я еще не знаю решения ректора. – \_\_\_\_\_
39. Дети гостей друзей именинника сделали очень оригинальный подарок. – \_\_\_\_\_

## 5.6. Словообразовательные суффиксы имени существительного

Основными суффиксами имен существительных при словообразовании являются: **-er, -or, -ess, -ian (-an), -age, -ance (-ence), -ancy (-ency), -ion (-ation, -tion, -sion, -ssion), -ment, -ness, -th, -ty (-ity, -ability, -ibility), -ist (-yst), -ism, -ee, -al, -dom, -hood, -our, -or, -ship, -ure (-ture, -sure, -ssure, -zure).**

### Тренировочные упражнения

*Ex. 15. Form the nouns with the help of suffixes. Translate the words.*

<b>-age</b>	<b>-er, -or, -ess</b>
to store – _____	to buy – _____
to break – _____	to direct – _____
to use – _____	to inspect – _____
to carry – _____	to invent – _____
to marry – _____	to produce – _____
to drain – _____	to translate – _____
to stop – _____	to visit – _____
to cover – _____	London – _____
short – _____	debt – _____
volt – _____	actor – _____
ton – _____	host – _____
bag – _____	lion – _____

**-ion (-ation, -tion, -sion, -ssion)**

to organize – \_\_\_\_\_

to educate – \_\_\_\_\_

to decide – \_\_\_\_\_

to form – \_\_\_\_\_

to attract – \_\_\_\_\_

to correct – \_\_\_\_\_

to generate – \_\_\_\_\_

transport – \_\_\_\_\_

to examine – \_\_\_\_\_

to protect – \_\_\_\_\_

**-ist (-yst), -ism**

art – \_\_\_\_\_

botany – \_\_\_\_\_

piano – \_\_\_\_\_

to type – \_\_\_\_\_

Marx – \_\_\_\_\_

material – \_\_\_\_\_

analysis – \_\_\_\_\_

telegraph – \_\_\_\_\_

social – \_\_\_\_\_

**-ee**

to pay – \_\_\_\_\_

to employ – \_\_\_\_\_

to draw – \_\_\_\_\_

address – \_\_\_\_\_

to test – \_\_\_\_\_

to consign – \_\_\_\_\_

to lease – \_\_\_\_\_

to trust – \_\_\_\_\_

**-ty (-ity, -ability, -ibility)**

active – \_\_\_\_\_

certain – \_\_\_\_\_

productive – \_\_\_\_\_

safe – \_\_\_\_\_

special – \_\_\_\_\_

available – \_\_\_\_\_

convertible – \_\_\_\_\_

incredible – \_\_\_\_\_

possible – \_\_\_\_\_

probable – \_\_\_\_\_

responsible – \_\_\_\_\_

**-th**

broad – \_\_\_\_\_

long – \_\_\_\_\_

deep – \_\_\_\_\_

wide – \_\_\_\_\_

strong – \_\_\_\_\_

dead – \_\_\_\_\_

true – \_\_\_\_\_

warm – \_\_\_\_\_

to grow – \_\_\_\_\_

to heal – \_\_\_\_\_

**-ment**

to arrange – \_\_\_\_\_

to employ – \_\_\_\_\_

to develop – \_\_\_\_\_

to ship – \_\_\_\_\_

to move – \_\_\_\_\_

to manage – \_\_\_\_\_

to equip – \_\_\_\_\_

to govern – \_\_\_\_\_

to announce – \_\_\_\_\_

**-ness**

happy – \_\_\_\_\_

smooth – \_\_\_\_\_

bright – \_\_\_\_\_

thick – \_\_\_\_\_

serious – \_\_\_\_\_

useful – \_\_\_\_\_

cool – \_\_\_\_\_

**-ian (an)**

Russia – \_\_\_\_\_

Ukraine – \_\_\_\_\_

Bulgaria – \_\_\_\_\_

history – \_\_\_\_\_

library – \_\_\_\_\_

music – \_\_\_\_\_

politics – \_\_\_\_\_

**-dom**

free – \_\_\_\_\_

wise – \_\_\_\_\_

king – \_\_\_\_\_

<b>-al</b>	<b>-ance (ence), -ancy (ency)</b>
to arrive – _____	to differ – _____
to approve – _____	to insist – _____
to deny – _____	to resist – _____
to propose – _____	import(ant) – _____
to refuse – _____	const(ant) – _____
to remove – _____	effici(ent) – _____
<b>-hood</b>	<b>-our (BE), -or (AE)</b>
brother – _____	<b>– give the translation of the words</b>
child – _____	colour (color) – _____
man – _____	harbour (harbor) – _____
mother – _____	labour (labor) – _____
neighbour – _____	humour (humor) – _____
<b>-ure (-ture, -sure, -ssure, -zure)</b>	rumour (rumor) – _____
to create – _____	<b>-ship</b>
to depart – _____	citizen – _____
to mix – _____	dictator – _____
to please – _____	friend – _____
to press – _____	leader – _____
to seize – _____	member – _____

**Ex. 16. Underline the nouns and translate them.**

coldly	softness	to wide	happiness
enlargement	equality	impatient	responsible
to stabilize	stabilization	possible	probably
freedom	harmful	harmlessness	aimless
attention	attentive	quantity	usage
glorious	measure	conversion	convertibility
resistance	attainable	payment	payee
desirable	limitation	addition	additionally
unrestricted	acceptance	consideration	indifference
explanatory	unexpectedness	to discontinue	disarmament
disappearance	undeveloped	significance	to compare
comparable	comparability	exclusion	unsatisfactory
relation	persistence	refusal	rectorship
length	assistance	useful	dangerous
physician	quality	universal	chemist
mathematician	reliable	effectiveness	



## Обзорные упражнения

### ***Ex. 17. Translate into Russian.***

1. Events are stimuli that suspend or activate tasks in coordination with real-time constraints.
2. Are there procedures which govern engineering's response to such problem description?
3. The design of an interactive application should take into account its intended users' familiarity with computers.
4. Designers should be encouraged to use parts already documented and used in the organization's other products.
5. Larry, a member of Fred's computer club, is finding that his computer offers him a way to challenge the school's judgments of his child's abilities.
6. An accurate forecast of future events reaches from the office boy's requisition for stamps to the managing directors' budget.
7. One's left hand does not know what one's right hand is doing.
8. The reaction, if any, runs in vacuum.
9. As to the scientists' work, it is of great importance.
10. There are some methods at one's disposal of reaching this goal.
11. In spite of some objections this engineer's design was accepted.
12. It was implicit owing to comments about using the computer's power.
13. They attempt to continually enlarge the sphere of the program's local simplicity.
14. Pr. Beale's theoretical work has always been firmly grounded in practice.
15. Of all the values Pauling's estimates of the radii of these volumes are of utmost importance.
16. Argument force rather than force argument should dominate.
17. The class of regulators can be thought of as composed of three parts: a parameter estimator, a linear controller parameter and a block which determines the controller parameters.
18. They have used the conventional crystal growth method.
19. Here frequency dependent rate equations are applicable.
20. The approach is used for time and money saving purposes.
21. A cell growth rate increase has been observed.
22. They have constructed a gas-filled high pressure cell.
23. Such integrity has been achieved by a combination of manual and computer based controls.
24. An integrated absorption area value of all methyl groups is reasonably good.
25. Straumanis has built an elaborate temperature-control system.
26. They have used the temperature controlled system.
27. The uptake of oxygen is the rate-determining step of the reaction.

28. Procedure-oriented languages are usually related to a class of problem types.

29. They had a tendency to a risk prone behaviour.

30. The remaining concern is to take into account varying demand rates and cost variables.

31. The research team developed a new kind of information receiving system.

32. They presented the mass of data necessary for effective land use planning.

33. The cold light source lamps operate at low power levels.

34. Cocyclization of II produced a completely different product distribution.

35. Two additional large centrifugal type heat pump water heaters have been provided.

***Ex. 18. Translate paying attention to the chain of nouns.***

System identification has arisen in different areas of application where the system model is completely unspecified but one wants to predict the system response, to regulate the system, or to simulate the system. The only data available are a sequence of known input and a sequence of noise corrupted output. The intermediate objective is to specify a model which agrees with the statistical data. To perform system identification requires three steps: structure determination, parameter identification, and model verification. Before solving the parameter identification problem, one would address the problem of identifiability of parameters. With an assumed structure, is it ever possible to identify the unknown parameters by extracting information from deterministic input and stochastic output data? The capability of answering this question will facilitate the selection of an appropriate model structure. Clearly, one would not select a model structure whose parameters cannot be identified. Thus the question of parameters identifiability is central in the procedures for system identification.

## **ТЕМА 6. ИМЯ ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE ADJECTIVE)**

Прилагательное – часть речи, выражающая качество или свойство предмета (явления, лица). В английском языке прилагательные не изменяются ни по числам, ни по падежам, ни по родам и переводятся в соответствии с родом, числом и падежом существительного, к которому относятся:

*a young man* – **молодой** человек;

*a young woman* – **молодая** женщина;

*young people* – **молодые** люди.

В предложении прилагательное выполняет функцию определения или именной части сказуемого. В функции определения прилагательное стоит перед определяемым словом, а в функции составной части сказуемого – после глагола-связки:

*He used **a new** method in his work. – Он использовал **новый** метод в своей работе.*

*This method is **new**. – Этот метод – **новый**.*

Некоторые прилагательные (**present** – *присутствующий*, **dependent** – *зависящий*, **essential** – *существенный*, **different** – *различный*, **able** – *способный*) в функции именной части составного сказуемого переводятся на русский язык соответствующим глаголом.

*Water is always **present** in the air. – Вода всегда **присутствует** в воздухе.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Translate the following word-combinations:**

long-term educational program – \_\_\_\_\_

internal combustion engine – \_\_\_\_\_

modern automatic flight control equipment – \_\_\_\_\_

life-long hobby – \_\_\_\_\_

the most essential experimental results – \_\_\_\_\_

heavy industry growth – \_\_\_\_\_

the Moscow regional environmental protection Committee – \_\_\_\_\_

scientific and technological progress rapid development – \_\_\_\_\_

Electronic Research and Engineering Laboratory – \_\_\_\_\_

the high quality optical fiber articles – \_\_\_\_\_

current political events – \_\_\_\_\_

essential scientific research programme – \_\_\_\_\_

federal bureau of investigation – \_\_\_\_\_

a successful research program development – \_\_\_\_\_

high frequency long wave radio station – \_\_\_\_\_

light industry enterprises – \_\_\_\_\_

foreign aid programs – \_\_\_\_\_

## 6.1. Степени сравнения прилагательных (The Degrees of Comparison)

Сравнительная степень односложных и некоторых двусложных прилагательных образуется при помощи суффиксов **-er, -r**:

*high – higher – высокий – более высокий (выше);*

*late – later – поздний – более поздний (позже).*

Превосходная степень прилагательных образуется при помощи суффиксов **-est, -st**. Перед прилагательным в превосходной степени обычно стоит определенный артикль **the**:

*the highest – самый высокий, (наивысший, высочайший);*

*the latest – самый поздний.*

Многосложные прилагательные образуют сравнительную и превосходную степени при помощи наречий **more** и **most** соответственно:

*more accurate – более точный; the most accurate – самый точный.*

В английском языке есть ряд прилагательных, образующих степени сравнения не по правилам и являющиеся исключением (табл. 6.1).

Таблица 6.1

Степени сравнения прилагательных

Исходная форма	Сравнительная степень (the Comparative Degree)	Превосходная степень (the Superlative Degree)
<b>Односложные прилагательные</b>		
big young	bigger younger	the biggest the youngest
<b>Многосложные прилагательные</b>		
interesting beautiful	more interesting more beautiful	the most interesting the most beautiful
<b>Исключения</b>		
good / well bad many much little old far	better worse more more less older / elder farther / further	the best the worst the most the most the least the oldest / the eldest the farthest / the furthest

## Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 2. State the degrees of comparison and translate them.**

most serious	worst	least	less important
best	most favourable	warmer	farthest
most essential	greatest	more attentive	better
lighter	highest	darker	worst
more difficult	younger	most interesting	furthest

**Ex. 3. Put the following adjectives in the comparative and the superlative degrees.**

big – _____	heavy – _____
short – _____	dirty – _____
clean – _____	near – _____
bad – _____	famous – _____
little – _____	good – _____
expensive – _____	cheap – _____
hot – _____	important – _____
beautiful – _____	large – _____
practical – _____	early – _____
happy – _____	bright – _____
dark – _____	fresh – _____
quick – _____	late – _____
nice – _____	rich – _____
thin – _____	thick – _____
weak – _____	easy – _____
lazy – _____	ugly – _____
comfortable – _____	far – _____
difficult – _____	wonderful – _____
popular – _____	serious – _____

**Ex. 4. Translate the sentences paying attention to the degrees of comparison.**

1. The Pacific Ocean is the greatest ocean in the world.
2. He is playing worse than usually.
3. The Supreme Court considers the most serious cases.
4. What is the highest legislative body in Great Britain?
5. Nothing is more pleasant than to sit in a comfortable chair and to read an interesting book.
6. The Sun is bigger than the Earth.
7. They will get better results if they work hard.
8. February is the shortest month in the year.

9. This is the most interesting book I have ever read.
10. Your report was much more interesting than mine.
11. My briefcase is much heavier than yours.
12. It is much colder today than it was yesterday.
13. We should discuss the most important questions today.
14. This is the most beautiful building of our city.
15. Iron is more useful than all other metals.
16. His radio-set is more powerful than ours.
17. The Trans-Siberian railway is the longest in the world.
18. The Neva is wider and deeper than the Moskva River.
19. He is one of the best engineers of our plant.
20. This is the worst film I've even seen.
21. He is the least, but not the last.
22. He is the most experienced teacher of our school.
23. The latest news confirmed our worst expectations.
24. They got down to business without further delay.
25. The eldest brother was 20 years older than the youngest.

**Ex. 5. Put the adjective in the suitable comparison degree. Translate the sentences.**

1. My brother is much (*young*) \_\_\_\_\_ than myself.
2. The first edition of the dictionary was good; the new one is still (*good*) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. That was his (*clever*) \_\_\_\_\_ step.
4. The sound grew (*faint*) \_\_\_\_\_ and (*faint*) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The opera theatre is one of (*beautiful*) \_\_\_\_\_ buildings in the city.
6. He always chooses (*easy*) \_\_\_\_\_ way.
7. I don't like your behaviour; you ought to be (*respectful*) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Which is (*high*) \_\_\_\_\_ mountain in the world?
9. David was (*talented*) \_\_\_\_\_ of the two brothers.
10. I can't imagine (*awkward*) \_\_\_\_\_ situation.
11. You have done me (*great*) \_\_\_\_\_ service that man can do his fellow-being.
12. She is (*kind*) \_\_\_\_\_ woman I have ever seen.
13. The situation was much (*bad*) \_\_\_\_\_ than I had expected.
14. He is (*courageous*) \_\_\_\_\_ man ever born.
15. It is (*cold*) \_\_\_\_\_ here than anywhere else.
16. This is (*good*) \_\_\_\_\_ poem ever written.
17. It was (*complicated*) \_\_\_\_\_ problem than the one I had solved before.
18. It is known that the diamond is (*hard*) \_\_\_\_\_ substance known.
19. Your brother is (*capable*) \_\_\_\_\_ of our young engineers.
20. This is (*bad*) \_\_\_\_\_ thing that can happen.

## 6.2. Сравнительные конструкции (The Comparative Constructions)

После сравнительной степени употребляется союз **‘than’**, который соответствует русскому *чем*:

*The Earth is bigger **than** the Moon.* – Земля больше Луны (**чем** Луна).

*This task is more difficult **than** that one.* – Это задание труднее того.

Для усиления сравнительной степени употребляются наречия **‘much’** и **‘far’**, которые ставятся перед прилагательным в сравнительной степени и переводятся на русский язык словами *гораздо, значительно*:

*The distance from the Sun to the Earth is **much longer** than that from the Moon.* – Расстояние от Солнца до Земли **гораздо больше**, чем от Луны.

При сравнении двух предметов, которым в равной степени присуще одно и то же качество, употребляется сравнительный союз **‘as ... as’** – *такой же ... как и*. Прилагательное употребляется в исходной форме:

*Water is **as** necessary **as** air.* – Вода **так же** необходима, **как и** воздух.

Если же степень качества различна, употребляется союз с отрицанием **‘not so ... as’** – *не такой, ... как*:

*Gold is **not so** light **as** aluminium.* – Золото **не такое** легкое, **как** алюминий.

Сочетания типа **‘as high as’**, **‘as long as’** и подобные могут выражать не только сравнение. Если после такого сочетания стоит числительное, то это сочетание обычно не переводится.

Сравните:

The speed of this plane is **as high as** the speed of sound. – Скорость этого самолета *такая же высокая*, как скорость звука.

The speed of this plane is **as high as** 1,200 kilometers per hour. – Скорость этого самолета 1200 километров в час.

Сочетание типа **‘as + прилагательное + as possible’** на русский язык переводится *как можно* + прилагательное в сравнительной степени:

*The speed of the rocket must be **as high as possible**.* – Скорость ракеты должна быть **как можно выше**.

Сочетание типа **‘five metres + прилагательное’**, указывающее меру (**long** – *длинный*, **wide** – *широкий*, **high** – *высокий* и т.д.), на русский язык переводится *длиной (в) 5 метров* и т.д.:

*The walls of this experimental house are **ten centimeters thick**.* – Стены этого экспериментального дома имеют **толщину 10 см**.

В конструкции ‘**the (more) ... the (better)**’ артикли, стоящие перед прилагательными или наречиями в сравнительной степени, переводятся *чем ..., тем:*

*The higher the temperature, the more rapid is the motion of the molecules.* – **Чем выше температура, тем быстрее** движение молекул.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 6. Translate the sentences paying attention to the comparison constructions ‘as ... as’, ‘not so ... as’, ‘the ... the’.**

1. The problem is as serious as the others.
2. The conference was not so interesting as I had expected.
3. She is as beautiful as before.
4. This place is not so picturesque now as it used to be.
5. This problem is not so serious as you think.
6. The solution of this problem is twice as serious as they think.
7. It is as cold today as it was yesterday.
8. The temperature today is not so high as it was yesterday.
9. The better we study, the more we know.
10. The longer the night, the shorter the day.
11. The more we go into the thing, the more complex the matter becomes.
12. The more we know, the more we understand how little we know.
13. The less money you have, the less you spend it.
14. The question is not so easy as you imagine.
15. He is twice as old as my brother.

**Ex. 7. Translate into English.**

1. Россия – самая большая страна в мире. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Новое здание Московского университета – одно из самых высоких зданий в Москве. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Этот текст самый трудный из всех текстов, которые мы когда-либо переводили. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Земля больше Луны. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. – Ваш брат старше Вас? – Нет, он моложе меня. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Сегодня ветер не такой сильный, как вчера. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. Февраль – самый короткий месяц в году. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Сегодня вы писали более трудный диктант, чем на прошлой неделе. – \_\_\_\_\_



9. Сегодня так же жарко, как и вчера. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
10. В прошлом году я тратил на английский язык меньше времени, чем в этом году. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
11. Эта аудитория меньше нашей. – \_\_\_\_\_
12. Это самая интересная книга, которую я когда-либо читал. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
13. Эта книга гораздо интереснее вашей. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
14. Сегодня не намного холоднее, чем вчера. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
15. Этот мальчик самый младший в этом классе. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
16. Вы должны теперь тратить на английский больше времени, чем в прошлом семестре. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
17. Авиастроительный завод выпускает больше продукции, чем металлургический. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
18. Ваш чемодан тяжелее моего. – \_\_\_\_\_
19. Продукция нашей швейной фабрики в этом году более разнообразна, чем в прошлом. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
20. Большая часть продукции кораблестроительного завода уходит на экспорт. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
21. Большинство студентов нашего факультета проходили практику в нотариальных конторах. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
22. В Думе на выборах меньшинство партий получили малое количество мест. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
23. При голосовании большинство голосов было отдано депутату от демократической партии. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
24. В английском Парламенте меньшинство партий создают Оппозицию. – \_\_\_\_\_
-

### 6.3. Словообразовательные суффиксы

Признаками прилагательного являются суффиксы: **-ful, -less, -ic (-ical), -al, -able, -ible, -ant (-ent), -ish, -ive (-ative), -ous (-ious, -uous), -y, -ary, -ory, -en.**

#### Тренировочные упражнения

*Ex. 8. Form the adjectives with the help of the suffixes. Translate them.*

<b>-able, -ible</b>	<b>-ant (-ent)</b>
to measure – _____	to depend – _____
to break – _____	to differ – _____
to read – _____	import(ance) – _____
to imagine – _____	emerg(ence) – _____
to control – _____	effici(ency) – _____
to compare – _____	<b>-ary, -ory</b>
to move – _____	reaction – _____
to wash – _____	custom – _____
access – _____	to advise – _____
comfort – _____	to prohibit – _____
<b>-al</b>	explanat(ion) – _____
season – _____	preparat(ion) – _____
continent – _____	<b>-ous (-ious, -uous)</b>
exception – _____	advantage – _____
condition – _____	mystery – _____
nation – _____	disaster – _____
education – _____	humour – _____
nature – _____	scandal – _____
universe – _____	instant – _____
practice – _____	<b>-less</b>
norm – _____	hope – _____
fundament – _____	aim – _____
profession – _____	limit – _____
person – _____	noise – _____
industry – _____	colour – _____
physics – _____	worth – _____
<b>-en</b>	<b>-ish</b>
wool – _____	Dane – _____
wood – _____	Scott – _____
wax – _____	red – _____
flax – _____	child – _____
gold – _____	fool – _____

<b>-y</b>	<b>ful</b>
health – _____	law – _____
storm – _____	harm – _____
earth – _____	tact – _____
noise – _____	success – _____
dream – _____	thank – _____
<b>-ive (-ative)</b>	truth – _____
to create – _____	<b>-ic (-ical)</b>
to talk – _____	hero – _____
to inform – _____	atmosphere – _____
to communicate – _____	metal – _____
to protect – _____	base – _____
affect – _____	climate – _____
atten(tion) – _____	geography – _____
expense – _____	academy – _____

**Ex. 9. Underline the adjectives and translate them.**

darkness	resistant	importance	freely
different	important	to organize	backwards
rectorship	length	childhood	useful
kindly	to widen	active	resistance
comparative	dangerous	assistance	universal
principal	possibility	aimless	anywhere
strength	attentive	characteristic	thankful
physician	to know	quality	quantitative
chemist	mathematically	neighbourhood	various
considerable	numerous	reliable	effective
scientific	brotherhood	respective	productive
understandable	natural	physicist	useless
friendship	to realize	closed	economical

**Ex. 10. Translate the following word-combinations:**

good-natured – _____	kind-hearted – _____
old-fashioned – _____	light-minded – _____
strong-willed – _____	narrow-minded – _____
blue-eyed – _____	pale-faced – _____
red-haired – _____	absent-minded – _____

**6.4. Неочевидные значения слова 'good'**

1. Для начала, нужно отметить, что это прилагательное, т.е. *хорошИЙ*, а не *хорошО*:

*good* – *хорошИЙ*;

*well* – *хорошО*.

2. Существительное **goods** не является прилагательным и означает *товары*.

3. **Not good** vs. **no good**:

*not good* – нехороший, плохой;      *no good* – бесполезный.

4. **For good (and all)** – навсегда, навеки.

5. **To be up to no good** – задумать недоброе.

6. **To come to no good** – плохо кончить.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 11. Translate the following sentences:**

1. He does *good*.
2. He does *well*.
3. I drive a bulldozer *well*.
4. I speak English *well*.
5. I speak *good* English.
6. Our light industry manufactures durable *goods*.
7. A service industry deals with rendering *goods* and services.
8. This car is *not good*, but it gets me to work.
9. That car is *no good*; it doesn't run at all.
10. – I'm moving to your house *for good*. Surprise! – It's *good* to know.
11. He has taken out his gun from the drawer. He *is up to no good*.
12. Yesterday I saw all Brad's ex-girlfriends gathering at the cafe and discussing something till late night. I think they *are up to no good*.
13. My jealous relatives thought that I would *come to no good*. But they can whistle (не дождутся) for it.

### Обзорные упражнения

**Ex. 12. Translate into Russian.**

1. The condition M greater than or less than N ensures that the capacity C is satisfied at all the stages.
2. The less sharp the pulse the greater the path length.
3. Cellulose is the most abundant of all naturally occurring organic substances.
4. The easiest answer is not the most enlightening.
5. A compound is considered more stable the smaller its potential energy.
6. The number of plates needed for chromatography is much higher than that required for distillation.
7. The general problem is considerably more difficult.
8. Definitions of "greater than" and "less than" have been made.

9. As the strips become finer the values of the elements in the matrices become smaller and similar.

10. The higher the purity of titanium the easier it is to fabricate, but the lower is its strength.

11. Life began in water, and most probably in sea water.

12. Consequently, the calculated values give the upper bounds.

13. The most serious problem is that of finding much more precisely how long man can endure permanence in space.

14. There remains one more controversial phenomenon to describe.

15. The thinner the layers, the greater the stirring and the total area of contact and hence the greater the potential for heat and salt exchange.

16. Transistors do, however, hold out a promise for smaller, simpler and less expensive computers with the high performance for the future.

17. This demonstration is the more convincing the greater the variety of absorbate vapors.

18. More competent, but fewer people do the coding with carefully orchestrated teamwork.

19. In view of this fact I decided to place much greater emphasis on general principles, and less on the details of individual systems.

20. The more accurately the forecast of the future demand is made the less the requirement for safety stock.

## ТЕМА 7. ЧИСЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE NUMERAL)

Числительные обозначают количество или порядок предметов и делятся на количественные и порядковые.

### 7.1. Количественные и порядковые числительные (The Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals)

Количественные числительные обозначают количество и отвечают на вопрос **how many?** – *сколько?*

*One* – один, *five* – пять и т.д.

Порядковые числительные обозначают порядок предметов и отвечают на вопрос **which?** – *который?*

*the first* – первый, *the fifth* – пятый и т.д.

Обратите особое внимание на написание следующих числительных: thirteen, fifteen, twenty, thirty, forty, fifty (табл. 7.1).

Таблица 7.1

## Образование числительных

Количественные числительные			Порядковые числительные
1 – 12	13 – 19 (суффикс <b>-teen</b> )	20 – 90 (суффикс <b>-ty</b> )	
1 – one			1 – the first (1 <sup>st</sup> )
2 – two		20 – twenty	2 – the second (2 <sup>nd</sup> )
3 – three	13 – thirteen	30 – thirty	3 – the third (3 <sup>rd</sup> )
4 – four	14 – fourteen	40 – forty	4 – the fourth (4 <sup>th</sup> )
5 – five	15 – fifteen	50 – fifty	5 – the fifth (5 <sup>th</sup> )
6 – six	16 – sixteen	60 – sixty	13 – the thirteenth (13 <sup>th</sup> )
7 – seven	17 – seventeen	70 – seventy	15 – the fifteenth (15 <sup>th</sup> )
8 – eight	18 – eighteen	80 – eighty	20 – the twentieth (20 <sup>th</sup> )
9 – nine	19 – nineteen	90 – ninety	21 – the twenty-first (21 <sup>st</sup> )
10 – ten			30 – the thirtieth (30 <sup>th</sup> )
11 – eleven			40 – the fortieth (40 <sup>th</sup> )
12 – twelve			100 – the hundredth (100 <sup>th</sup> )
100 – a hundred                      1 000 – a thousand			
1 000 000 – a million (BE), a billion (AE)			

## 7.2. Чтение числительных свыше ста

100 – a (one) hundred;  
 101 – a (one) hundred and one;  
 125 – one hundred and twenty-five;  
 200 – two hundred;  
 300 – three hundred;  
 1000 – a (one) thousand;  
 1005 – one thousand and five;  
 1235 – one thousand two hundred and thirty-five;  
 2000 – two thousand;  
 5345 – five thousand three hundred and forty-five;  
 1,000,000 – a (one) million;  
 1,000,000,000 – a (one) milliard (в Англии); one billion (в Америке).

В отличие от русского языка, числительные **hundred**, **thousand**, **million** не принимают окончания множественного числа (**-s**), когда перед ними стоит количественное числительное, которое является его определением:

*three hundred students, five thousand houses, ten million books.*

**Hundred**, **thousand** и **million** могут быть и существительными, когда после них употребляется существительное с предлогом **of**. В этом случае они принимают окончание **-s**:

*hundreds of people – сотни людей;*  
*thousands of houses – тысячи домов.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

#### **Ex. 1. Name the cardinal numerals.**

3	13	30	4	14	40	5
15	50	8	18	80	12	11
100	500	225	86	32	93	78
27	41	705	826	348	923	635
1000	2826	4568	6007	3829	5732	123
75 173	86 112	425 712	1 306 527	2 032 678	3 765 901	234 567 890

#### **Ex. 2. Name the ordinal numerals formed from the cardinal ones.**

1	11	21	2	12	20	3
13	30	4	14	40	5	15
50	6	16	60	8	18	80
9	19	90	100	103	300	425
705	1000	1015	2345	3789	32098	123

#### **Ex. 3. Read in English and translate.**

50 kilometers	300 cars	530 students	on the 5 <sup>th</sup> day
480 dollars	675 miles	4550 specialists	in the 2 <sup>nd</sup> text
5 400 000 books	3 mln tons	page 782	flight 01
bus 45	200 roubles	text 25	1100 persons
320 <sup>th</sup> km	1007 magazines	room 216	on the 3 <sup>d</sup> deck

#### **Ex. 4. Translate into English.**

пятьдесят автомобилей – \_\_\_\_\_  
 триста килограммов – \_\_\_\_\_  
 шестьдесят один грамм – \_\_\_\_\_  
 два миллиона тонн – \_\_\_\_\_  
 сотни ящиков – \_\_\_\_\_  
 тысячи книг – \_\_\_\_\_  
 двести восемьдесят один доллар – \_\_\_\_\_  
 три тысячи рублей – \_\_\_\_\_

### 7.3. Чтение дробей (The Fractions)

В простых дробях:

1. числитель выражается количественным числительным, а знаменатель – порядковым;
2. когда числитель больше единицы, знаменатель принимает окончание **-s**.

В десятичных дробях:

1. целое число отделяется от дроби точкой (а не запятой, как в русском языке);

2. каждая цифра читается отдельно. Точка, отделяющая целое число от дроби, читается *point*; 0 читается *o* [ou] (буква алфавита), (в Америке 0 читается *zero*). Если целое число равно нулю, то оно часто не читается.

Проценты обозначаются знаком % или словами **per cent**.

Простые дроби (Common Fractions)	Десятичные дроби (Decimal Fractions)
$\frac{1}{2}$ – a (one) half	0.1 – o point one <i>или</i> point one
$\frac{1}{3}$ – a (one) third	0.01 – o point o one <i>или</i> point o one
$\frac{2}{3}$ – two thirds	2.35 – two point three five
$\frac{3}{4}$ – three quarters <i>или</i> : three fourths	32.305 – three two (thirty-two) point three o five
$1\frac{1}{3}$ – one and a third	
$2\frac{5}{8}$ – two and five eighths	

### Тренировочные упражнения

#### **Ex. 5. Read in English.**

5.4 tons	5 %	0.36 %	37.5°
$\frac{2}{3}$ of a kilometer	$2\frac{1}{2}$ hours	32°	800°
0.2 mile	28 %	3.7 tons	$\frac{5}{6}$ of a liter
2.75 kg	45 inches	0.5 km	$3\frac{3}{7}$ of a mile

#### **Ex. 6. Translate into English. Give as many variants as possible.**

- $\frac{3}{5}$  тонны – \_\_\_\_\_
- $\frac{1}{4}$  километра – \_\_\_\_\_
- $\frac{2}{3}$  процента – \_\_\_\_\_
- $1\frac{1}{2}$  часа – \_\_\_\_\_
- $\frac{1}{2}$  фунта – \_\_\_\_\_
- $4\frac{1}{2}$  пенса – \_\_\_\_\_
- $2\frac{3}{4}$  процента – \_\_\_\_\_
- $2\frac{2}{3}$  дюйма – \_\_\_\_\_
- 0.105 метра – \_\_\_\_\_
- 2.18 фунта – \_\_\_\_\_
- 17.562 тонны – \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 процентов – \_\_\_\_\_
- 23 процента – \_\_\_\_\_
- 0.36 процента – \_\_\_\_\_
- 2.5 процента – \_\_\_\_\_



## 7.4. Хронологические даты (The Dates)

Годы, в отличие от русского языка, обозначаются количественными числительными, причем слово **год** отсутствует:

*1900 – nineteen hundred – тысяча девятисотый год;*  
*in 1907 – in nineteen o [ou] seven – в тысяча девятьсот седьмом году;*  
*1965 – nineteen sixty-five – тысяча девятьсот шестьдесят пятый год;*  
*2000 – two thousand – двухтысячный год.*

Даты обозначаются количественными или порядковыми числительными:

*April 12, 1961*                      *April the twelfth (April twelve),*  
*April 12<sup>th</sup>, 1961* читаются      *nineteen sixty-one* или:  
*12<sup>th</sup> April, 1961*                      *the twelfth of April, nineteen sixty-one.*

При обозначении эры используются следующие аббревиатуры:  
*BC (before Christmas) = BCE (Before Common Era) – до н.э. (до нашей эры);*  
*AD (Anno Domini) (лат.) = CE (Common Era) – н.э. (нашей эры).*

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 7. Read the following dates.**

1242	1848	1512	1783	1905	1900	2003
2000	1945	1306	1400	2010	1625	1903
on the 1 <sup>st</sup> of May		on January 18 <sup>th</sup>		on the 7 <sup>th</sup> of November		
at the beginning of 1980		at the end of 1899		in the middle of 1990s		
12/I – 1946	22/X – 1983	31/III – 1995	27/XI – 1955			
25/V – 1900	20/VIII – 1950	07/VI – 2014	31/XII – 2000			
5 o'clock in the morning	2 p.m.	10 a.m.	3.15 p.m.	4.20 a.m.		
6.30 in the evening	3 o'clock in the afternoon			12 noon		

**Ex. 8. Translate into English.**

12 января 1946 г. – \_\_\_\_\_  
31 марта 1950 г. – \_\_\_\_\_  
12 мая 2014 г. – \_\_\_\_\_  
24 апреля 1962 г. – \_\_\_\_\_  
31 декабря 1999 г. – \_\_\_\_\_  
01 января 2000 г. – \_\_\_\_\_  
16 марта 2009 г. – \_\_\_\_\_  
246 г. до н.э. – \_\_\_\_\_  
V век до н.э. – \_\_\_\_\_

I век н.э. — \_\_\_\_\_  
 241 г. н.э. — \_\_\_\_\_

## Обзорные упражнения

### *Ex.9. Read and translate the text.*

#### Technology – a Resource

We find ourselves today between a forest and an ocean – a forest of new knowledge and an ocean of need. We are generating more new knowledge in one year than we generated in a full decade less than half a life-span ago. In fact, if you look upon the last 50,000 years of man's existence in terms of life-spans, the speed of our progress – the pace of change is readily apparent. Because 800 modern life-spans would bridge more than 50,000 years. But of those 800 people 650 would have spent their lives in caves or something worse; only the last 70 had any truly effective means of communicating with one another; only the last six ever saw a printed word; only the last six had any real means of measuring heat and cold; only the last four could measure time with any precision; only the last two used an electric motor; and many of the items that make up our material world were developed within the life-span of the 800<sup>th</sup> person.

## ТЕМА 8. МЕСТОИМЕНИЕ (THE PRONOUN)

Местоимение – это часть речи, которая употребляется вместо имени существительного или прилагательного. Местоимения делятся на личные, притяжательные и возвратно-усилительные (табл. 8.1).

Таблица 8.1

### Образование местоимений

Личные		Притяжательные			Возвратно-усилительные
и. п. (кто? что?)	объект. п. (кому? кого?)	простая форма (чей?)	перевод	абсолют- ная фор- ма (чей?)	
I	me <i>мне, меня</i>	my	<i>мой</i>	mine	myself
you	you <i>тебе, тебя</i>	your	<i>твой</i>	yours	yourself
he	him <i>ему, его</i>	his	<i>его</i>	his	himself
she	her <i>ей, её</i>	her	<i>её</i>	hers	herself
it	it <i>ему, его, ей, её</i>	its	<i>его, её</i>	its	itself
we	us <i>нам, нас</i>	our	<i>наш</i>	ours	ourselves
you	you <i>вам, вас</i>	your	<i>ваш</i>	yours	yourselves
they	them <i>им, их</i>	their	<i>их</i>	theirs	themselves

## 8.1. Личные местоимения (The Personal Pronouns)

Личные местоимения имеют формы двух падежей: именительного и объектного. Объектный падеж соответствует русским косвенным падежам.

Личные местоимения в именительном падеже выполняют в предложении функцию подлежащего и, следовательно, стоят непосредственно перед сказуемым:

*He is an engineer. – Он инженер.*

*They work at our plant. – Они работают на нашем заводе.*

Местоимение **it** заменяет неодушевленные существительные и соответствует местоимениям *он, она, оно* в зависимости от рода существительного в русском языке:

*A line has one dimension. It has length. – Линия имеет одно измерение. Она имеет длину.*

Местоимение **they** заменяет и одушевленные и неодушевленные существительные.

Личные местоимения в объектном падеже являются дополнением (прямым, косвенным, предложным) и всегда стоят после глагола-сказуемого:

*I know him well. – Я хорошо знаю его.*

*He usually shows me his books. – Он обычно показывает мне свои книги.*

*They often talk with her. – Они часто беседуют с ней.*

## 8.2. Притяжательные местоимения (The Possessive Pronouns)

Притяжательные местоимения выражают принадлежность и отвечают на вопрос **whose?** *чей? чья? чьё? чьи?* Притяжательные местоимения имеют две формы:

1. **Простую**, которая употребляется в функции определения перед существительным:

*Show me your drawing. – Покажите мне ваш чертеж.*

Если перед существительным есть другие определяющие слова, то притяжательное местоимение стоит перед ними:

*Show me your two last drawings. – Покажите мне ваши два последних чертежа.*

2. **Абсолютную**, которая употребляется вместо ранее упомянутого существительного и выполняет в предложении функцию подлежащего, дополнения или именной части сказуемого:

*This book is **mine**. – Это **моя** книга.*

Притяжательные местоимения, как правило, переводятся на русский язык местоимениями *свой, своя, свое, свои*, если они стоят в том же лице, что и подлежащее:

*I help **my** friend in his work. – Я помогаю **своему** другу в работе.*

*They completed **their** experiments. – Они завершили **свои** опыты.*

Притяжательные местоимения английского предложения не всегда переводятся на русский язык:

*He raised **his** hand. – Он поднял руку.*

### 8.3. Возвратно-усилительные местоимения (The Reflexive Pronouns)

Все личные местоимения в английском языке имеют соответствующие возвратные местоимения, которые имеют окончание **-self** в единственном числе и **-selves** во множественном числе.

Возвратные местоимения обычно стоят после глагола-сказуемого и переводятся:

1. Возвратным глаголом:

*Be careful! Don't hurt **yourself**! – Осторожно! Не ушибитесь!*

2. Русским местоимением *себя (себе, собой)*:

*He never speaks about **himself**. – Он никогда не говорит о **себе**.*

Усилительные местоимения, которые совпадают по форме с возвратными, употребляются для усиления значения существительного или местоимения и соответствуют русским местоимениям *сам, сама, само, сами*. В этом случае они стоят в конце предложения или после слова, которое они усиливают:

*We will solve this problem **ourselves**. – Мы решим эту задачу **сами**.*

*The new **crane itself** turns the derrick. – Новый **кран сам** поворачивает стрелу.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

*Ex. 1. Translate the sentences paying attention to the personal, object and possessive pronouns.*

1. We saw them at the Institute.
2. He knows you very well.
3. Tell us a few words about your work.
4. As a rule we finish our work at 5 o'clock.

5. I have never seen him and his friends.
6. Give them their textbooks on history of transport.
7. This student is a friend of mine.
8. I put my copy-book on his table.
9. Ann took our notes and showed them to her scientific adviser.
10. Will you give me your notebook?
11. What is he? – He is a shipbuilding student.
12. Put your textbook on the table and open it.
13. This is your textbook. It is new. Take it, please.
14. I saw him yesterday and took his notes.
15. Ask them about their work.

**Ex. 2. Change the underlined words to the pronouns.**

1. The teacher is helping the students to translate the article. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

2. Mother will send Mary to buy the tickets. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. The man gave the books to the boy. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. My friend gave this book to his wife. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. The book is not suitable for children. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Peter worked hard at mathematics. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Fill in the blanks with the personal pronouns.**

1. Australia is one of the five continents, but \_\_\_\_\_ is much smaller than the other four.
2. I'm afraid it's none of your business. May I ask \_\_\_\_\_ not to bother \_\_\_\_\_ anymore?
3. My father works at the plant; \_\_\_\_\_ is a chief engineer.
4. My sister entered the University last year and now \_\_\_\_\_ is a second-year student.
5. The exam will be tomorrow, but \_\_\_\_\_ am not ready for \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
6. Our engineers are busy now; \_\_\_\_\_ are engaged in making a series of experiments.
7. Our work is connected closely with yours, and \_\_\_\_\_ are ready to help \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks with the possessive pronouns.**

1. Tell him not to forget \_\_\_\_\_ ticket; she mustn't forget \_\_\_\_\_ tickets either.
2. Can you lend me \_\_\_\_\_ dictionary? I've left mine at home.
3. I am an engineer. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Petrov.
4. Ann and Mary are students. \_\_\_\_\_ friends are students too.

5. – What are \_\_\_\_\_ names? – \_\_\_\_\_ name is Nick and \_\_\_\_\_ name is Jack.
6. This car is very small, but \_\_\_\_\_ motor is rather powerful.
7. I prefer the Crimea to the Caucasus because of \_\_\_\_\_ dry climate.
8. We came late and \_\_\_\_\_ turn was the last.
9. She likes to tell us about \_\_\_\_\_ children.
10. They always do \_\_\_\_\_ lessons at home.

**Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with the personal pronouns in the objective case.**

1. When I met \_\_\_\_\_ several years ago he was quite a young man.
2. Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_? What a beautiful girl she was!
3. I received the news which you sent \_\_\_\_\_. But I don't consider \_\_\_\_\_ to be important.
4. Your watch is 5 minutes slow, what's the matter with \_\_\_\_\_?
5. He is one of our students. I saw \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere.
6. I don't believe \_\_\_\_\_ because she always tells lies.
7. These are very good books. Where do you get \_\_\_\_\_?
8. Is he going to speak to \_\_\_\_\_ about his new work?
9. Read these words and translate \_\_\_\_\_ into Russian.
10. Listen to \_\_\_\_\_! I brought \_\_\_\_\_ the latest news.
11. We are tired. Let \_\_\_\_\_ have a break.
12. We ask you to forgive \_\_\_\_\_ for our behaviour.
13. Do you recognize \_\_\_\_\_? I was your student ten years ago.
14. Tell \_\_\_\_\_ not to repeat their mistakes any more.

**Ex. 6. Put in the possessive pronouns in the absolute form.**

1. His composition is much more interesting than (your) \_\_\_\_\_ or (my) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. It was through no fault of (her) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. You can very well do without my help, but not without (their) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. His radio-set is always out of order. But so is (your) \_\_\_\_\_!
5. (Our) \_\_\_\_\_ was the last turn.
6. The pleasure was all (my) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 7. Choose the suitable pronoun from the given in brackets.**

1. Would you like to see some of (her, hers) latest sketches?
2. He hasn't read a line of (you, yours), how can he criticize (your, yours) poems?
3. If this book is neither (her, hers) nor (he, his), it should be (my, mine).
4. (Their, theirs) knowledge of the subject is not much superior to (our, ours).
5. I am afraid they will believe (her, hers) words rather than (your, yours).
6. All (our, ours) clothes were extremely dirty, and (my, mine) especially so.

7. Will you help me to sort out the things? I cannot tell which are (*your, yours*) and which are (*our, ours*).

8. (*Their, theirs*) boat was faster than (*our, ours*).

**Ex. 8. Translate the sentences with the reflexive pronouns.**

1. I will translate the article myself.
2. The students corrected their mistakes themselves.
3. We have to discuss this problem ourselves.
4. The computer corrected all the mistakes itself.
5. She bought this book for herself.
6. He wants to do it himself.
7. Put on a raincoat to protect yourself from the rain.
8. Be careful! You will hurt yourselves.
9. The villagers built themselves new houses.
10. They built the houses themselves.
11. Would you mind keeping your opinion to yourself?
12. I heard it from a man who himself was present there.
13. She noticed that there was someone standing between herself and the door.
14. He was in a still worse position than (we) ourselves.
15. Go and see it for yourself.
16. You can trust him. He is honesty itself.
17. And then they left me to myself.
18. If one wants a thing done, one had better to do it oneself.
19. She thinks too much of herself.
20. He looked in the mirror and could not recognize himself.

**Ex. 9. Finish these sentences using reflexive pronouns.**

**Model:** If you want a job done well, do it \_\_\_\_\_.  
If you want a job done well, do it *yourself*.

1. The girl stood at the fire, warming \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He made a mistake, and then he corrected \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The man was badly hurt, but he tried to raise \_\_\_\_\_.
4. They went swimming, but they didn't enjoy \_\_\_\_\_.
5. How will we entertain \_\_\_\_\_?
6. I hope you didn't hurt \_\_\_\_\_.
7. What on earth do you mean? Explain \_\_\_\_\_!

## 8.4. Указательные местоимения (The Demonstrative Pronouns)

К указательным местоимениям относятся местоимения **this, that, it, such, same**.

Указательные местоимения **this, that** имеют формы единственного и множественного числа:

**this** – *этот, эта, это*, **these** – *эти*;

**that** – *тот, та, то*, **those** – *те*.

В предложении они выполняют функцию подлежащего или определения:

Подлежащее: ***This** is our plant.* – *Этот наш завод.*

Определение: *We work at **this** plant.* – *Мы работаем на этом заводе.*

Если перед существительным есть несколько определений, то указательное местоимение занимает первое место в цепочке определений:

*We work at **this** large steel plant.* – *Мы работаем на этом большом металлургическом заводе.*

В значении указательного местоимения употребляется также местоимение **it**, соответствующее русскому местоимению *это*:

– *What is this?* – ***It** is a new vehicle.* – *Что это?* – *Это новое транспортное средство.*

К указательным местоимениям относятся также местоимения **such** *такой* и местоимение **same**, которое всегда употребляется с определенным артиклем и переводится на русский язык *тот же самый, такой же*.

Род, число, падеж указательных местоимений зависит от рода, числа и падежа соответствующих русских существительных:

***such an** instrument* – *такой прибор*;

***the same** instrument* – *тот же самый прибор*;

***such a** length* – *такая длина*;

***the same** length* – *та же самая длина*.

### Тренировочные упражнения

*Ex. 10. Translate the sentences paying attention to the demonstrative pronouns.*

1. This is a good story.
2. These are textbooks on history.
3. That was his first lecture.
4. This textbook is new and that one is old.



5. You will read all these articles at home.
6. Yesterday that group of students had two lectures.
7. These criminal cases will be tried by the Crown Court.
8. Those specialists were very experienced.
9. This is my dictionary and that is yours.
10. These are my dictionaries and those are yours.
11. – What is this? – This is my copy-book.
12. – What are these? – These are my copy-books.
13. I am not going anywhere this summer.
14. It happened in 1980. He was abroad that year.
15. I know these people, but I don't know those ones.

### 8.5. Вопросительные и относительные местоимения (The Interrogative and Relative Pronouns)

Вопросительные и относительные местоимения в английском языке, в основном, совпадают по форме. Это местоимения **who (whom)** – *кто (кому, кого)*, **whose** – *чей*, **which** – *который*, **what** – *что*, а перед существительным – *какой*:

*Whose discovery is this? – Чье это открытие?*

*What is this? – Что это?*

*What institute do you go to? – В каком институте вы учитесь?*

Относительные местоимения служат для присоединения придаточного предложения к главному и являются союзными словами, т.е. не только связывают придаточное предложение с главным, но и являются членами придаточного предложения:

*This is the element **whose** properties we are interested in. – Это элемент, свойства **которого** нас интересуют.*

*I am explaining to him **what** we are working at. – Я объясняю ему, над **чем** мы работаем.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 11. Insert the interrogative pronouns given in the box.**

*who, whom, whose, what, which*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ will help me?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ of you will help me?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ of these girls is the youngest?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is your telephone number?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ notebook is this, Helen's or Ann's?

6. \_\_\_\_\_ are you drinking?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ are you expecting?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ understands this rule?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ teaches you English?
10. – \_\_\_\_\_ is he? – He is an engineer.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ English books have you read this term?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ do you know about him?
13. – \_\_\_\_\_ gloves are these? – They are mine.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ would you like to drink?
15. \_\_\_\_\_ is the coldest season of the year?
16. \_\_\_\_\_ is he waiting for?

## 8.6. Неопределенные местоимения и их производные (The Indefinite Pronouns and their Derivatives)

К неопределенным местоимениям относятся местоимения **some**, **any**, **every** (и их производные) и местоимение **one**.

**Some** употребляется в утвердительных предложениях и имеет следующие значения:

1. *Несколько, некоторые*, если стоит перед исчисляемым существительным во множественном числе:

*I have **some** friends here. – У меня здесь есть **несколько** друзей.*

2. *Некоторое количество, немного* – перед неисчисляемыми существительными. В этом случае **some** обычно не переводится на русский язык:

*There is **some** water in the tank. – В танке есть вода.*

Местоимение **some**, как правило, не употребляется в вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях. Оно заменяется местоимением **any** *какой-нибудь*:

*I have **some** friends here.*

*There is **some** water in the tank.*

*Have you **any** friends here?*

*Is there **any** water in the tank?*

*I have **no (not any)** friends here.*

*There is **no (not any)** oil in the tank.*

3. *Какой-то* – перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе:

*The engineer read about this mode in **some** magazine. – Инженер читал об этой модели в **каком-то** журнале.*

4. *Приблизительно, около* – перед числительным:

*There are **some** 30 students at the lecture. – На лекции присутствует **приблизительно** 30 студентов.*

Местоимение **any** употребляется также в утвердительных предложениях со значением *любой, всякий*:

*You can find this book in **any** shop.* – *Вы можете найти эту книгу в **любом** магазине.*

Неопределенные местоимения **each** и **every** – *каждый* стоят перед существительным в единственном числе и исключают употребление артикля, поскольку являются определителями существительного:

***Every** engineer must learn foreign languages.* – ***Каждый** инженер должен изучать иностранные языки.*

***Each** student of our group takes part in some research.* – ***Каждый** студент нашей группы принимает участие в каком-нибудь исследовании.*

Отрицательное местоимение **no** – *никакой, нет* имеет то же значение, что и **not any**, и употребляется перед существительным как в единственном, так и во множественном числе. При наличии **no** артикль перед существительным не употребляется, а глагол стоит в утвердительной форме, так как в английском предложении может быть только одно отрицание:

*He has **no** lectures today.* – *У него сегодня **нет** лекций.*

Перед существительным в функции подлежащего обычно употребляется **no**, которое переводится как *никакой, ни один*:

***No** magazine writes about this discovery.* – ***Ни один (никакой)** журнал не пишет об этом открытии.*

***No** information comes from him.* – *От него **не** поступает **никакой** информации.*

Отрицательное местоимение **none** заменяет как исчисляемое, так и неисчисляемое существительное:

***None** of them answered this question.* – ***Никто** из них **не** ответил на этот вопрос.*

*Is there **any** liquid in the tank?* – *Есть в резервуаре какая-нибудь жидкость?*

*No, there is **none**.* – ***Нет.** (Там **нет никакой** жидкости.)*

Местоимения **some**, **any**, **every**, **no** употребляются в сочетаниях со словами: **thing** – для обозначения неодушевленных предметов, **body** и **one** – для одушевленных. В сочетании со словом **where** они образуют неопределенные наречия (табл. 8.2).

В функции подлежащего могут употребляться только **nobody** (**no one**), **nothing**, а не **not ... anybody** или **not ... anything**, причем глагол-сказуемое употребляется с ними в 3-м лице единственного числа в утвердительной форме:

*Nobody has read this article yet. – Никто еще не читал этой статьи.*

С отрицательными местоимениями и наречиями может быть два варианта построения предложения, т.к. в английском предложении возможно только одно отрицание:

*He knows **nothing** about it. – Он ничего не знает об этом.*

*He does **not** know **anything** about it. – Он ничего не знает об этом.*

Таблица 8.2

Образование производных слов

Местоимения	+ thing	+ body + one	+ where	Употребление
<b>some</b> некоторый какой-то какой-нибудь	<b>something</b> что-то что-нибудь	<b>somebody</b> <b>someone</b> кто-то кто-нибудь	<b>somewhere</b> где-то куда-нибудь куда-то где-нибудь	в утвердительном предложении
<b>any</b> всякий любой	<b>anything</b> всё	<b>anybody</b> <b>anyone</b> всякий все	<b>anywhere</b> езде повсюду	в утвердительном предложении
<b>not any</b> = <b>no</b> никакой	<b>not ... anything</b> = <b>nothing</b> ничто ничего	<b>not ... anybody</b> = <b>nobody</b> <b>no one, none</b> никто	<b>not ... anywhere</b> = <b>nowhere</b> нигде никуда	в отрицательном предложении
<b>any?</b> какой-нибудь?	<b>anything?</b> что-то? что-нибудь?	<b>anybody?</b> кто-то? кто-нибудь?	<b>anywhere?</b> где-то? куда-то? где-нибудь? куда-нибудь?	в вопросительном предложении
<b>every</b> каждый всякий	<b>everything</b> всё	<b>everybody</b> <b>everyone</b> все	<b>everywhere</b> езде повсюду	во всех трёх типах предложений

Местоимение **one** употребляется в качестве подлежащего для обозначения неопределенного лица.

Как правило, оно употребляется в сочетании с модальными глаголами **must, should, can**. Такое сочетание переводится *нужно, следует, мож-*

но в зависимости от модального глагола. Иногда само местоимение **one** переводится словами *каждый, всякий*:

**One cannot always find time for reading.** – Не всегда **можно** найти время для чтения.

**One should always come to the classes in time.** – **Следует** всегда приходить на занятия вовремя.

**One can do it easily.** – **Можно (Каждый может)** легко сделать это.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 12. Translate the sentences paying attention to the pronouns 'some', 'any', 'no'.**

1. There is some book on the table.
2. They discovered some new facts.
3. There was some water in the glass.
4. Are there any mistakes in his text?
5. There must be some explanation for any phenomenon.
6. Does this article contain any useful information?
7. There is no water in the vase.
8. There isn't any atmosphere on the Moon.
9. Have you noticed any changes?
10. Did they touch upon any new problem?
11. Let's meet some other day.
12. Is there any difference between them?
13. I don't see any difference and I think there is no difference at all.
14. He can answer any question on the subject.
15. Any doctor will tell you that it is harmful to your health.
16. There is no other choice.
17. Is any additional proof necessary?
18. Can we have some milk?
19. Why are some people so boring?
20. Were there any objections?
21. – What material do you need? – Any that is available.

**Ex. 13. Give short answers according to the pattern. Work in pairs.**

**Model:** A) – Have you got any magazines? – Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.  
– Have you got any magazines? – Yes, I've got some.

B) – Has Jane got any change for the bus? – No, \_\_\_\_\_.  
– Has Jane got any change for the bus? – No, she hasn't got any.

1. Have you got any letters for me? – Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Have you got any roses in the garden? – No, \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Has he got any ink in his pen? – Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Has she got any books in the bag? – No, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Have they got any children? – No, \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Have you got any sugar in your tea? – Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Has John got any relative here? – No, \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Has she got any money in her pocket? – Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 14. Put in the pronouns 'some', 'any', and 'no'.**

1. Put \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in your tea, there is \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in it.
2. Was there \_\_\_\_\_ cause for complaint?
3. He took out \_\_\_\_\_ strange instrument from his bag.
4. I can do it without \_\_\_\_\_ outside help.
5. – Did \_\_\_\_\_ student answer better than he? – \_\_\_\_\_ did.
6. – Have \_\_\_\_\_ more ice-cream. – Thanks, I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ more.
7. The hall was full, so she could find \_\_\_\_\_ vacant seat.
8. They told me \_\_\_\_\_ strange stories.
9. – What book shall I bring you? – \_\_\_\_\_ you like.
10. I can answer now only \_\_\_\_\_ questions on the subject.

**Ex. 15. Ask questions according to the pattern. Substitute 'any'-forms for 'no'-forms.**

**Model:** – There's *nobody* here. (in that room) – Is there *anybody* in that room?

1. The book is nowhere in the house. – \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden.
2. She has got nothing in her hand. – \_\_\_\_\_ in her pocket.
3. The child has got nobody to play with here. – \_\_\_\_\_ at home.
4. No one is ready for the test-paper. – \_\_\_\_\_ for a dictation.
5. There's nothing in the box. – \_\_\_\_\_ near the box.
6. We must go nowhere today. – \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
7. Nobody can do it at once. – \_\_\_\_\_ by the evening.

**Ex. 16. Translate the sentences paying attention to the derivative pronouns.**

1. I saw somebody at the window.
2. Is there anything new?
3. There is somebody in the next room who wants to speak to you.
4. Has anybody called?
5. I want somebody to copy this text.
6. We have not told anyone about it.
7. Give me something to eat, I am hungry.
8. I haven't any more money with me, so I cannot buy anything else.
9. Was there anybody absent?
10. Let me know if something happens.

11. Nobody knew his address.
12. He wrote nothing about it.
13. I will give the book to nobody else.
14. Nothing is known about this fact.
15. There was nobody at home when I came back.

**Ex. 17. Reword the following sentences using the word 'else' and the derivatives of 'some', 'any', 'no'.**

**Model:** Put the money in *some other* place.  
Put the money *somewhere else*.

1. Give the ticket to some other person. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Jane wants some other thing. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. There's no other job to do now. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. I don't want to go to any other place. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. Have they got any other things for us? – \_\_\_\_\_
6. I can't be in any other place. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. He doesn't want to see any other person. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. The director wants to talk to no other man. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. She has to go to some other place. – \_\_\_\_\_
10. They needn't go to any other place tonight. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 18. Fill in the blanks with the derivative pronouns.**

1. He has \_\_\_\_\_ important to tell you.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ entered the room.
3. Can I do \_\_\_\_\_ for you?
4. I know \_\_\_\_\_ about the trial.
5. You may invite \_\_\_\_\_ you want.
6. Is \_\_\_\_\_ absent today?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ left the door open.
8. Has \_\_\_\_\_ come here while I was away?
9. Can you tell me \_\_\_\_\_ about the life of this writer?
10. Did you speak to \_\_\_\_\_ about it?

## 8.7. Количественные местоимения (The Quantitative Pronouns)

К количественным местоимениям относятся местоимения **many**, **few**, **much**, **little**.

**Many** *много* и **few** *мало* употребляются с исчисляемыми существительными:

*He has many (few) mistakes in his test-paper. – У него в контрольной работе много (мало) ошибок.*

**Much** *много* и **little** *мало* употребляются с неисчисляемыми существительными:

*He has **much (little)** work today. – У него сегодня много (мало) работы.*

**Much** и **many** могут заменяться синонимами: **a lot (of)**, **lots (of)**, **plenty (of)**. Кроме того, в утвердительном предложении сочетания **a great many**, **a great number (of)** употребляются вместо **many**; **a great deal (of)**, **a great amount (of)** – вместо **much**:

*I have **plenty of** work. – У меня много работы.*

**Little** и **few** могут употребляться с неопределенным артиклем – **a little** – *немного*, **a few** – *немного, несколько*:

*He has **little** time. – У него мало времени.*

*We have **a little** time, let's go to the cinema. – У нас есть немного времени, пошли в кино.*

*There are **few** English magazines in the library. – В библиотеке мало английских журналов.*

*There are **a few** chemical magazines on that shelf. – На той полке есть несколько журналов по химии.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 19. Translate the sentences with the pronouns 'many', 'much', 'little', 'few', 'a little', 'a few'.**

1. I haven't got much time.
2. Were there many guests at the party?
3. There isn't much snow this winter.
4. Do you know many students at your faculty?
5. I have too little money to buy such expensive things.
6. – Do you speak English? – Yes, a little.
7. Very few people knew about it.
8. My parents are going away for a few days.
9. He has little experience in this matter.
10. How much does it cost?
11. Many people want to see this play.
12. You made few mistakes in your test-paper.
13. How much time does it take to go there?
14. How many times have you been there?
15. He had very few friends.
16. He had a few friends.
17. He drank a little water and felt much better.
18. There was very little water in the glass.



19. The chairman said a few words.
20. Hurry up! We have very little time.

**Ex. 20. Express the same, idea more emphatically using 'very few', 'very little' in your sentences.**

**Model:** There aren't *many* people in the shops.  
There are *very few* people in the shops.

1. There isn't much I can do to help you. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. There isn't much lemonade in the bottle. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. There aren't many eggs in the basket. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. She hasn't got many dresses. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. I can't spend much time on the report. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. They don't have many dishes to cook for dinner. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 21. Insert the pronouns 'many', 'much', 'little', 'few', 'a little', 'a few'.**

1. How \_\_\_\_\_ sheets of paper do you want?
2. We haven't had \_\_\_\_\_ rain this summer.
3. He hasn't got \_\_\_\_\_ work to do today.
4. Have you invited \_\_\_\_\_ people to the party?
5. Did the storm do \_\_\_\_\_ damage to the crops?
6. I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ books in my library.
7. It's no use asking him about it. He has too \_\_\_\_\_ experience in this field.
8. Your test-paper is much better this time. You made very \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes.
9. May I have \_\_\_\_\_ wine, please?
10. He is a man of \_\_\_\_\_ words.
11. He has very \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge of the matter.

**Ex. 22. Choose the necessary pronoun in brackets.**

1. A good speaker can say much in (*few, a few*) words.
2. Can you retell the story in (*few, a few*) words?
3. Why do you eat so (*little, a little*)? Try (*little, a little*) of everything.
4. The street looked almost deserted. There were (*few, a few*) people in it.
5. I have only (*few, a few*) things left undone.
6. He takes very (*little, a little*) trouble with his work.
7. It has given me not (*little, a little*) trouble.
8. (*Little, a little*) did I know what awaited me!
9. (*Few, a few*) are as capable at languages as he is.
10. – Can you speak French? – Yes, (*little, a little*).
11. – Are there many mistakes in my translation? – Very (*few, a few*).

## 8.8. Многофункциональность местоимения *it*

Местоимение *it* может выступать в роли:

1. Личного местоимения (подлежащее, дополнение):

*Your solution is correct. Explain it, please.* – Ваше решение правильно. Объясните *его*, пожалуйста.

2. Указательного местоимения (подлежащее):

*What is this? It is a new device.* – Что это? *Это* новый прибор.

3. Безличного местоимения (подлежащее):

*It is said that he is an experienced engineer.* – Говорят, что он опытный инженер.

4. Усилительного местоимения (для выделения отдельных членов предложения):

*It is Popov who invented the radio.* – Радио изобрел не кто иной, как Попов.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 23. Translate the following sentences.**

1. A crime is a dangerous antisocial act. It affects the interests of the whole society even when it is directed against an individual person.

2. It is easy to answer this question.

3. I have a very good book on Economy. You may take it if you need it.

4. It is this country that strongly opposes the arms race.

5. Elections are equal. It means that each citizen has one vote.

6. The House of Commons plays the major role in law-making. It consists of Members of Parliament.

7. It is a famous picture. It was painted by John Constable. The artist was awarded a golden medal for it.

8. The City is situated in the center of London. It occupies about one square mile in area.

9. It is the country that applies nuclear energy for peaceful purposes.

10. It is necessary to do everything possible to prevent crime.

11. It is the Parliament that passes new laws.

12. Elections are universal. It means that all citizens at the age of 18 have the right to elect and be elected.

13. This committee has a wide range of activities. First of all it sees to it that all laws are observed.

14. It is autumn now. It often rains in autumns. It is getting dark though it is only 6 o'clock now.

15. It is known that administrative law is connected closely with constitutional law.

16. It is also the duty of district courts to protect the electoral rights of citizens.

17. It is said that all experiments are going on successfully.

18. It is obvious that this problem has become problem number one.

19. It is to be noted that the new discovery is of primary importance in this field of science.

20. It is known that the laser has become a multipurpose tool. It has caused a real revolution in science.

21. It was your brother who brought me the letter yesterday.

22. It is the people's interests that determine the policy of our government.

23. I cannot translate texts without a dictionary. It is very difficult.

24. It was only with the establishing of Moscow University that legal science began to develop in Russia. It was a great progress.

25. I cannot understand it. It is beyond me.

26. It is a new text-book; it is devoted to financial problems.

27. It is a new law; it was adopted by the Parliament last week.

28. It often snows in winter and sometimes it rains. It usually happens in sea-side areas.

29. It is known that all bodies possess weight.

30. It is necessary to do everything possible to reduce crime level.

31. It should be taken into consideration that it is a very delicate matter and it must be given considerable thought.

32. It was he who made so many discoveries.

33. It is this article that I recommend you to read.

34. It is the function of Parliament to make and adopt new laws.

35. It is getting dark, thought it is only 6 o'clock.

## 8.9. Многофункциональность слова *'that'*

Слово ***that*** выполняет в предложении функции:

1. Местоимения:

а) указательного (подлежащее, определение):

***That** new instrument is very precise. – Этом (том) новый прибор очень точный.*

б) относительного – вводит придаточные определительные предложения и завершает усиленную конструкцию:

*An equation **that** states a rule in brief form is called a formula. – Уравнение, **которое** кратко выражает правило, называется формулой.*

2. Союза:

а) для присоединения придаточных дополнительных предложений:

*D. I. Mendeleev was sure **that** the missing elements would be found. – Д. И. Менделеев был уверен, **что** недостающие элементы будут открыты.*

b) для присоединения придаточных подлежащих:

***That** it is possible to convert heat to energy and energy back to heat can be demonstrated in a number of ways. – То, **что** тепло можно преобразовать в энергию и энергию обратно в тепло, можно продемонстрировать разными способами.*

c) для присоединения придаточных сказуемых:

*The main difficulty is **that** the experiments haven't shown good results yet. – Главная трудность заключается в том, **что** эксперименты еще не дали положительных результатов.*

3. Слова-заместителя:

*The power of atomic ice-breaker is much greater than **that** of tanker. – Мощность атомного ледокола гораздо больше **мощности** танкера.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 24. Translate the following sentences.**

1. I don't know that man.
2. At that moment I heard some strange noise.
3. I was in that country 5 years ago.
4. My brother lives in that red house.
5. I didn't agree with him and that made him angry.
6. "I don't think we should do it." That is what he said.
7. The price of iron is higher than that of copper.
8. The main problem is that of finding a suitable place for our equipment.
9. The year on the Earth is twice as short as that on Mars.
10. He said that the question should be answered at once.
11. They knew that the experiment was a failure.
12. The remark that he made was very important.
13. That was the distance that they covered for half an hour.
14. I am afraid that he won't be able to come.
15. That he is a famous writer is known to everybody.
16. That he agreed to help his comrades is only natural.
17. That happened the year I graduated from the University.
18. She said that she would return in two days.
19. The question that was discussed at the conference is of great significance.
20. That was the thing that we needed.
21. The unit of mass and that of weight are different physical units.

22. The victory of our state in the Great Patriotic war was not only that of the army, but also the victory of the whole people.

23. Each state in the USA has its own system of courts similar to that of the Federal courts.

24. We want to have friendly relations with all governments and with that of the US as well.

25. That law was adopted 5 years ago.

26. The problem that we discussed yesterday is of great international significance.

27. That problem was discussed at the previous conference.

28. The population of India is greater than that of Japan.

### Обзорные упражнения

#### *Ex. 25. Translate into English.*

1. Не покупайте красных карандашей, купите синие. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. Это перо очень плохое. Дайте мне хорошее. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. Мне не нравится это зеленое яблоко. Дайте мне красное. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. Мой брат прислал мне несколько английских книг и несколько итальянских. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. Каждый студент знает это положение. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. Каждый из студентов будет получать стипендию за отличные оценки за экзамены. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. Я уже читала этот реферат. Дайте мне другой. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. Почему так мало студентов в аудитории? – \_\_\_\_\_

9. Никогда не следует откладывать на завтра то, что можно сделать сегодня. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. Есть ли у вас корабль для перевозки крупногабаритных грузов? – \_\_\_\_\_

11. Он принес нам книги, необходимые для подготовки к зачету. – \_\_\_\_\_

12. Они могут купить в том магазине все, что нам нужно. А мы пока сходим в этот. – \_\_\_\_\_

### **Ex. 26. Translate into Russian**

1. No satisfactory explanation of this observation has been offered.
2. These solids show no basic properties.
3. He gave me some good advice.
4. Any discussion is useful.
5. The halogen must be ionized to some extent.
6. The product alone with no admixtures weighed 20 g.
7. No increase of human happiness comes from increase of wealth.
8. As a rule, calculation of the value presents no special difficulties.
9. No doubt some 200 people will attend the symposium.
10. The solvent exerts no influence on any of the constants.
11. The book is available at any library.
12. Every science generalizes the facts.
13. Any map may be drawn either in the plane or on the surface of a sphere.
14. Some proofs are neither difficult nor interesting – merely a little tiresome.
15. No damage occurred during any of the tests.
16. This is certainly no longer a system for any discussion.
17. No matter how complicated the map, four colours suffice.
18. Trying to minimize the importance of the discovery was of no use.
19. The train was no longer visible.
20. These metallic ions account for no more than 9 % of dimer.

## **ТЕМА 9. НАРЕЧИЕ (THE ADVERB)**

Наречие – это часть речи, указывающая на признак действия или качества. По форме наречия делятся на две группы: простые и производные.

Простые наречия: **here** – *здесь*, **now** – *теперь*, **soon** – *скоро* и др.

Производные наречия образуются от прилагательных или других частей речи при помощи суффикса **-ly**: **easily** *легко*, **daily** *ежедневно*.

### **9.1. Место наречия в предложении**

Наречия неопределенного времени **always** – *всегда*, **often** – *часто*, **seldom** – *редко*, **already** – *уже*, **usually** – *обычно*, **sometimes** – *иногда*, **soon** – *скоро*, **never** – *никогда* и другие ставятся перед смысловым глаголом:

*We **often** make experiments.* – Мы **часто** проводим опыты.

Когда сказуемое состоит из нескольких компонентов, наречие неопределенного времени ставится после первого глагола:

*We have **already** made this experiment.* – Мы **уже** провели этот опыт.

Но эти наречия ставятся после глагола **to be**:

*He is **always** present at the lectures.* – Он **всегда** присутствует на лекциях.

Наречия, являющиеся в предложении обстоятельством места или времени, стоят либо в начале предложения перед подлежащим, либо в конце предложения:

*Tomorrow I will go to the library.* – **Завтра** я пойду в библиотеку.

Наречия, относящиеся к прилагательному, причастию-определению или другому наречию, обозначают признак или степень качества и всегда стоят перед словом, к которому относятся:

*highly important problem* – **чрезвычайно** важная проблема;  
*quickly moving vehicle* – **быстро** движущийся транспорт.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Give the short answers using the adverbs suggested.**

**Model:** A) – Do you ever forget to do your homework? (Yes / sometimes) – Yes, I *sometimes* do.

B) – Is Bob busy? (Yes / often) – Yes, he *often* is.

1. Are cartoon films interesting? (Yes / usually) – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Does Nina help you with mathematics? (Yes / often) – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Are your pupils lazy? (Yes / sometimes) – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Do they go to the country for week-ends? (Yes / usually) – \_\_\_\_\_
5. Does your bicycle often need mending? (No / seldom) – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Do you lend money to your friends? (Yes / often) – \_\_\_\_\_
7. Does he ring you up every day? (No / rarely) – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Do you understand English speakers? (Yes / usually) – \_\_\_\_\_
9. Is Mary tired? (No / seldom) – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Can you get a good breakfast here? (Yes / generally) – \_\_\_\_\_
11. Is your sister ever wrong? (Yes / frequently) – \_\_\_\_\_
12. Does your friend miss classes of Grammar? (No / never) – \_\_\_\_\_
13. Do you understand your teacher of English? (Yes / always) – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Reword the sentences according to the models. Use the verbs suggested and the corresponding adverb instead of the adjective in the given sentence. Make all the necessary changes.**

**Model A:** – Mike is a *quick* worker. (works) – Mike works *quickly*.

1. Fred is a *quick* runner. (*runs*) – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ben is a *careful* driver. (*drives*) – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Your brother is an *excellent* speaker. (*speaks*) – \_\_\_\_\_
4. She's a *beautiful* singer. (*sings*) – \_\_\_\_\_
5. My granny is a *slow* walker. (*walks*) – \_\_\_\_\_

6. She always gives a *prompt* reply. (*replies*) – \_\_\_\_\_
7. He's a *bad* swimmer. (*swims*) – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Leonov is a *wonderful* actor. (*acts*) – \_\_\_\_\_

**Model B:** – That is a *fast* train. (*goes*) – That train goes *fast*.

1. Your cousin is a *hard* worker. (*works*) – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Jane is a *fast* driver. (*drives*) – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Kate is an *early* riser. (*rises*) – \_\_\_\_\_
4. This is a *daily* paper. (*comes out*) – \_\_\_\_\_
5. This girl is always a *late* comer. (*comes*) – \_\_\_\_\_
6. He always gives a *straight* answer. (*answers*) – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. State whether the underlined word is an adjective, pronoun or adverb. Translate the sentences.**

1. The questions were so easy that everybody could answer them.
2. I can easily answer all the questions.
3. They spoke loudly.
4. He spoke in a loud voice.
5. He went straight home.
6. The street is quite straight.
7. You would write better if you had a better pen.
8. He has little knowledge of English.
9. I little thought about this problem.
10. We hope to stay here for a long time.
11. I don't think I'll stay here long.
12. He works more and better now than he did last year.
13. I have more books than you and they are in a better condition than yours.
14. He is playing worse than usual.
15. This film is much worse than the one I saw last month.

**Ex. 4. Choose the suitable form of the words in brackets.**

1. I didn't sleep (*good, well*) last night.
2. I always get (*good, well*) marks.
3. He was (*angry, angrily*) with me.
4. He spoke (*angry, angrily*) with me.
5. Smoking is a (*bad, badly*) habit.
6. You passed all the exams (*bad, badly*).
7. The soldier behaved (*brave, bravely*).
8. He is a (*brave, bravely*) soldier.
9. This is quite (*clear, clearly*).
10. This (*clear, clearly*) shows the difference.
11. They received me (*cold, coldly*).



12. The weather was (*cold, coldly*) yesterday.
13. This is a (*comfortable, comfortably*) flat.
14. We travelled (*comfortable, comfortably*).
15. My daughter is (*dangerous, dangerously*) ill.
16. Smoking is (*dangerous, dangerously*).

## 9.2. Степени сравнения наречий (The Degrees of Comparison)

Односложные наречия образуют степени сравнения путем прибавления к исходной форме наречия суффиксов **-er** (в сравнительной степени) и **-est** (в превосходной). Двусложное наречие **early** образует степени сравнения таким же образом:

*late – later – latest; early – earlier – earliest.*

Двусложные и многосложные наречия образуют степени сравнения путем прибавления слов **more** и **most**:

*clearly – more clearly – most clearly.*

Некоторые наречия образуют степени сравнения не по правилу (табл. 9.1).

Таблица 9.1

Образование степеней сравнения наречий

Простая форма	Сравнительная степень	Превосходная степень
well – хорошо	better – лучше	best – лучше всего
badly – плохо	worse – хуже	worst – хуже всего
much – много	more – больше	most – больше всего
little – мало	less – меньше	least – меньше всего
far – далеко	farther (further) – дальше	farthest (furthest) – дальше всего

При сравнении двух действий, которым присущ один и тот же признак, употребляется, как и с прилагательными, парный союз **as ... as**:

*This plane moves **as** quickly **as** the sound does.* – Этот самолет движется **так же** быстро, как и звук (*т.е. со скоростью звука*).

Сочетание **as well as** может, наряду со сравнительной конструкцией, быть составным союзом *так же, как (и)*. Сравните:

*He knows mathematics **as well as** his friend does.* – Он знает математику **так же хорошо, как и** его друг.

*The English system of weights was used in England **as well as** in a number of other countries.* – Английская система весов применялась в Англии **также, как и** в ряде других стран.

Наречие **as well** имеет значение *также* и всегда стоит в конце предложения:

*The plant produces cars. It produces vessels **as well**.* – Этот завод выпускает автомобили. Он *также* выпускает корабли.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 5. Form the comparative and the superlative degrees from the following adverbs:**

often – _____	early – _____
easily – _____	well – _____
little – _____	late – _____
clearly – _____	slowly – _____
quickly – _____	much – _____
closely – _____	fast – _____

**Ex. 6. Put the adverbs in brackets in the comparative or superlative degrees.**

1. He works (*well*) than his assistant. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. She visits us (*frequently*) than them. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. We all ran fast, but Sam ran (*fast*) than I, Dick ran (*fast*) of all. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. Which of all these books did you enjoy (*much*)? – \_\_\_\_\_

5. Which of these two books did you enjoy (*much*)? – \_\_\_\_\_

6. You should have told me about it (*early*). – \_\_\_\_\_

7. He speaks English (*correctly*) of all in our group. – \_\_\_\_\_

### 9.3. Формы наречий

Некоторые наречия совпадают по форме с прилагательными, но часто отличаются от них по значению:

*long* (прил.) – длинный, долгий,      *long* (нар.) – давно.

Некоторые наречия, образованные от прилагательных при помощи суффикса **-ly**, также отличаются по значению от соответствующих прилагательных:

*real* (прил.) – настоящий,      *really* (нар.) – действительно.

Некоторые наречия имеют две формы: одну без суффикса, совпадающую с прилагательным, другую – с суффиксом **-ly**. Последние часто не совпадают по значению с соответствующими прилагательными (табл. 9.2):

*high* (прил.) – *высокий*;

*high* (нар.) – *высоко*;

*highly* (нар.) – *весьма, очень, чрезвычайно*.

Таблица 9.2

Формы наречий

Прилагательные	Наречия без суффикса	Наречия с суффиксом
long – длинный, долгий very – самый, тот самый only – единственный far – далекий	long – давно very – очень only – только far – далеко; намного	
direct – прямой		directly – сразу, непосредственно
ready – готовый		readily – быстро, легко
large – большой		largely – в основном, очень, главным образом
real – настоящий	real – настоящий	really – действительно
hard – трудный	hard – упорно	hardly – едва
high – высокий	high – высоко	highly – весьма, очень, чрезвычайно
wide – широкий	wide – широко	widely – очень, значительно
near – близкий	near – близко	nearly – почти
late – поздний	late – поздно	lately – за последнее время, недавно
close – близкий	close – близко, рядом	closely – тщательно, тесно, внимательно

## 9.4. Словообразовательные суффиксы

Наречия образуются с помощью суффиксов **-ly, -ward, -wards**.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 7. Form the adverbs from the words given below with the help of the suffixes and translate them.**

<b>-ly</b>	<b>-ward, -wards</b>
quiet – _____	up – _____
steady – _____	down – _____
day – _____	North – _____
month – _____	East – _____
loud – _____	South – _____
bright – _____	West – _____
cheap – _____	back – _____
recent – _____	for – _____

## 9.5. “Good” или “well”

Ранее мы уже рассказывали о различиях между **‘good’** и **‘well’**. Итак:

1. **Good** – это прилагательное и оно используется при описании существительного. Переводится как *хороший, добрый, приятный*.

2. **Well** – это наречие, и оно используется, когда нам необходима дополнительная информация о глаголе. Переводится как *хорошо*.

3. Но с глаголами **feel, taste, smell** – *пахнуть*, **look** – *выглядеть* используется слово **‘good’**, а не **‘well’**.

4. Когда мы говорим о ком-то, что он (она) **look good**, то это означает, что он (она) *выглядит привлекательно*. Но когда мы говорим о ком-то, что он (она) **look well**, то мы подразумеваем, что он (она) *выглядит здоровым(ой)*, т.е. *неболеющим(ей)*.

5. В современном английском, задавая вопрос: **«How are you?»** – мы частенько можем услышать в ответ: **«I’m good»**. Такой вариант ответа является грамматически неверным, но в последнее время в разговорной английской речи он используется все чаще и чаще.

6. Иногда вы можете услышать оба слова в одной фразе: **«Well and good»**. Эта фраза означает, что *в целом всё вроде бы хорошо, но есть одно «но»*. А также эта фраза может означать *ну что же, ну и прекрасно, ну и ладно, тем лучше*.

7. А еще слово **well** переводится как *колодец*, а выражение **oil well** – *нефтяная скважина*.

## Тренировочные упражнения

### **Ex. 8. Translate into Russian.**

1. The guy was renowned for his good deeds.
2. I don't speak very good English. My English isn't very good.
3. He usually behaves very well.
4. She didn't speak English very well.
5. – How do you like the soup? – It tastes good. My compliments to the chef!
6. It smells so good in this room.
7. This dress looks good on you.
8. It's all well and good that you've become keen on karate, but what about your pregnancy?
9. What you are saying is well and good, but I prefer to make my own living.
10. Those exotic dishes are all well and good but I like plain homemade pancakes.
11. The reception was well and good, but I had expected more from Judith and her cooking.
12. If you really want to get in trouble because of it, well and good.
13. You have no more complaints? Well and good. I won't take up any more of your time.
14. In Russian villages where there are no houses with running water, people take water out of wells.
15. A lot of oil wells are excavated in the Okhotsk Sea.

## Обзорные упражнения

### **Ex. 9. Translate the sentences paying attention to the different meaning of some adverbs.**

#### **a) *еще* (still, yet, else, more, other, only, as early as):**

1. She is still sleeping.
2. He is too young yet to get married.
3. He hasn't come yet.
4. What else can you tell me?
5. Where else are you going tomorrow?
6. Give me some more water.
7. What other books did you buy?
8. It's only 8 o'clock.
9. He was with us only yesterday.
10. It was known as early as in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

**в) давно (long, for a long time, long ago, a long time ago):**

1. Have you been here long?
2. I have been waiting for you for a long time.
3. It happened long ago.
4. The accident took place a long time ago.
5. I have known him for a long time, since our first meeting which was quite a long time ago.

**с) недавно (not ... long, not long ago, lately, recently):**

1. I haven't been sitting here long.
2. This book came out not long ago.
3. It happened quite recently.
4. Have you seen him lately?
5. His new book was published recently, though I haven't heard anything about him lately.

**д) очень (very, very much, too – слишком):**

1. He is a very nice man.
2. The text is very difficult.
3. She is very much better.
4. I like this painting very much.
5. I am very much obliged to you.
6. The bus runs too slowly.
7. You are too young to grumble.
8. It is too late to do anything.
9. It is a very interesting work, but it is too responsible and too complicated.

**е) почти (hardly, scarcely, nearly, almost):**

1. There were hardly any people in the street.
2. I scarcely ever see him.
3. It is nearly 5 o'clock.
4. I have nearly finished my work.
5. I almost made a mistake.

**ф) довольно (quite, fairly, rather):**

1. The film is quite good.
2. The play is quite awful.
3. – What is his English like? – It's fairly good.
4. She is fairly pretty.
5. I'm afraid his health is rather poor.
6. Your words have been rather unpleasant.
7. The ice-cream is rather good.
8. Your pronunciation is rather good; it's quite correct and fairly audible.

**g) *может, также* (too, also, either, as well):**

1. I will be there too.
2. Have you read the story too?
3. They also agreed with me.
4. He has a dog, but he has also a cat.
5. He is clever and industrious too.
6. I was there as well.
7. Has she gone away as well?
8. I haven't seen him either.
9. She can't write yet, she can't read either.
10. I didn't know about it either.

**Ex. 10. Translate into Russian:**

**a) the following adverbs:**

somewhere – \_\_\_\_\_  
nowhere – \_\_\_\_\_  
sideways – \_\_\_\_\_  
sidewise – \_\_\_\_\_  
likewise – \_\_\_\_\_

everywhere – \_\_\_\_\_  
anyway – \_\_\_\_\_  
endways – \_\_\_\_\_  
clockwise – \_\_\_\_\_

**b) the following sentences:**

1. I've seen her somewhere before.
2. This device is used everywhere.
3. You can find this book nowhere.
4. I'll try to do it anyway.
5. The ship was damaged and moved sideways.
6. Place the instrument endways.
7. You should move clockwise, not sidewise.
8. Look at me and do likewise.

**Ex. 11. Reword the given sentences inserting either the adjective or the adverb suggested in the proper place.**

**Model:** (bright, brightly) The sun was shining.  
The sun was shining *brightly*.  
(bright, brightly) There was a fire in the room.  
There was a *bright* fire in the room.

1. (*regular, regularly*) He attends classes.  
(*regular, regularly*) He has working hours.
2. (*real, really*) Do you want to go there?  
(*real, really*) She has a lot of friends.

3. (*easy, easily*) This is an exercise.  
(*easy, easily*) I can translate this article.
4. (*complete, completely*) These volumes contain the works of Pushkin.  
(*complete, completely*) I am satisfied.
5. (*clear, clearly*) Give him an answer.  
(*clear, clearly*) This shows the difference.
6. (*pretty, prettily*) Alice danced too.  
(*pretty, prettily*) They've got a little garden.
7. (*terrible, terribly*) What weather we are having!  
(*terrible, terribly*) It was a long war.
8. (*quick, quickly*) Peter ran off.  
(*quick, quickly*) That's a reply!
9. (*pleasant, pleasantly*) We had a talk on Monday.  
(*pleasant, pleasantly*) The days passed.
10. (*rare, rarely*) This is a postage stamp.  
(*rare, rarely*) I see him.
11. (*angry, angrily*) She spoke to him.  
(*angry, angrily*) That was an answer.

**Ex. 12. Change the sentences using the adverb 'as ... as'. Make all the necessary changes according to the model.**

**Model:** He speaks English fluently. (Nick)  
Nick speaks English *as* fluently *as* he does.

1. Alec drives the car carefully. (his wife) – \_\_\_\_\_
2. He usually speaks calmly. (Bill) – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Your sister speaks English correctly. (you) – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Mary knows English History well. (Ann) – \_\_\_\_\_
5. They speak English beautifully. (Madge) – \_\_\_\_\_
6. We often go to the library. (you) – \_\_\_\_\_
7. My children will go camping willingly. (your children) – \_\_\_\_\_
8. I seldom went to the country. (you) – \_\_\_\_\_
9. My daughter reads a lot. (your son) – \_\_\_\_\_



10. Nelly and Paul live far from the University. (you) – \_\_\_\_\_

---

**Ex. 13. Translate the text singling out adjectives and adverbs.**

### **Arriving from Outer Space**

Suppose that we were space travellers, visiting the earth from some distant planet. It would be difficult to detect much trace of the atmosphere until we were in the region of the lower part of the orbit of the first Sputnik, say between 200 and 300 miles up. At that distance from the earth the pressure of the atmosphere, which measures the weight of the air above us, is less than one millionth of that on the ground. This means we would be moving in what is called a “vacuum” on earth, for at this level, pressure is lower than that which can be reached by the finest laboratory pumps.

Having passed through the stratosphere, we would enter the troposphere, or region of weather. Meteorologists are interested in the whole atmosphere, but especially in the troposphere, because it is only in this relatively thin layer that we find weather, that is clouds, fogs, rain, hail and snow. In general the higher one goes in the atmosphere, the colder the air becomes. This seems odd at first, because by climbing up we are getting nearer the sun, from which we get all our heat. The explanation is that the rays of the sun are not very effective in heating air directly. Most of the energy in a sun beam passes through clear air with very little absorption. What happens is that the sun’s rays heat the surface of the earth, both the ground and the sea, and it is from the warm surface of the earth that the atmosphere receives most of the energy which appears as wind, and causes weather generally.

## **ТЕМА 10. ПРЕДЛОГ (THE PREPOSITION)**

Предлоги – служебные слова, которые указывают на связь существительных (или местоимений) с другими словами в предложении (табл. 10.1).

Предлоги в английском языке бывают: предлоги **места (place)** и **направления (direction)**, предлоги **времени (time)**, **составные (compound)** предлоги, предлоги, передающие **падежные отношения (case)**. Помимо самих предлогов, существуют **устойчивые словосочетания с предлогами (prepositional phrases)**.

Предлоги **места** означают нахождение предмета на поверхности чего-либо, внутри какого-либо замкнутого пространства, под другим предметом или около другого предмета:

*on the table* – **на** столе;

*in the room* – **в** комнате;

*under the book* – **под** книгой;

*at the desks* – **у** столов.

Таблица 10.1

## Основные предлоги

Предлог	Значение
<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>
<b>about</b>	1. <i>вокруг, кругом</i> (расположение или движение вокруг ч.-л.); 2. <i>около, близ, у</i> (расположение вблизи ч.-л.); 3. <i>по</i> (место совершения действия); 4. <i>около, к</i> (приблизительность во времени); 5. <i>о, об; насчет, относительно</i>
<b>above</b>	1. <i>над</i> ; 2. <i>свыше, больше; выше</i>
<b>according to</b>	1. <i>согласно, в соответствии с</i> ; 2. <i>по утверждению, по словам, по мнению</i>
<b>across</b>	<i>сквозь, через; на другой стороне, по другую сторону</i>
<b>after</b>	1. <i>за, позади</i> (местонахождение позади предмета или движение вдогонку); 2. <i>после, за, через, спустя</i> (последовательность во времени, промежуток времени); 3. <i>по, с, согласно</i> (сходство с ч.-л. или подражание к.-л.)
<b>against</b>	1. <i>против</i> (противоположное направление или положение); 2. <i>о, об, по, на, к</i> (опора, фон, препятствие); 3. <i>рядом, у</i> (непосредственное соседство); 4. <i>на, с</i> (столкновение или соприкосновение)
<b>along</b>	<i>вдоль, по</i>
<b>among</b>	<i>среди, между</i>
<b>around (round)</b>	1. <i>вокруг</i> ; 2. <i>по; за; около</i> ; 3. <i>около; приблизительно</i>
<b>at</b>	1. <i>в, на, у, при</i> (местонахождение); 2. <i>в, к, на</i> (движение в определенном направлении); 3. <i>в, на</i> (момент, время действия); 4. <i>за</i> (действие, занятие); 5. <i>в, на</i> (состояние, положение)
<b>before</b>	1. <i>перед</i> (местонахождение); 2. <i>до, перед</i> (время)
<b>behind</b>	<i>за, сзади, позади; после</i>
<b>below</b>	<i>ниже, под</i>
<b>beside</b>	<i>рядом с; около, близ</i>
<b>besides</b>	<i>помимо, кроме</i>

Продолжение табл. 10.1

<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>
<b>between</b>	<i>между</i>
<b>beyond</b>	1. <i>по ту сторону; за;</i> 2. <i>вне; сверх, выше</i>
<b>by</b>	1. <i>у, при, около</i> (близость); 2. <i>мимо</i> (прохождение мимо предмета или через определенное место); 3. <i>к</i> (приближение к определенному моменту, сроку и т.д.); 4. <i>a book by Tolstoy книга Толстого</i> (указание на автора; предложный оборот передается тв. или род. п.); 5. <i>by plane самолетом</i> (указание на средство передвижения; предложный оборот переводится тв. п.); 6. <i>через, посредством, от, по</i> (причина, источник)
<b>by means of</b>	<i>посредством</i>
<b>concerning</b>	<i>относительно, касательно</i>
<b>down</b>	<i>вниз, (вниз) по; вдоль по</i>
<b>due to</b>	<i>благодаря</i>
<b>during</b>	<i>в течение, в продолжение; во время</i>
<b>except</b>	<i>исключая, кроме</i>
<b>except for</b>	<i>за исключением, кроме</i>
<b>for</b>	1. <i>для, ради;</i> 2. <i>за;</i> 3. <i>к, в</i> (направление); 4. <i>из-за, за, по причине, вследствие;</i> 5. <i>в течение, в продолжение</i>
<b>from</b>	1. <i>от, из, с</i> (пространственное значение); 2. <i>с, от, из</i> (временное значение)
<b>in</b>	1. <i>в (о), на, у</i> (нахождение внутри или в пределах ч.-л.); 2. <i>в, на</i> (вхождение или внесение в пределы или внутрь ч.-л.; проникновение в к.-л. среду); 3. <i>в, во время, в течение, через</i> (временное значение); 4. <i>в, при, с, на</i> (условия, окружающая обстановка, обстоятельства совершения действия)
<b>in accordance with</b>	<i>в соответствии с, согласно</i>
<b>in addition to</b>	<i>вдобавок, в дополнение к, кроме того, к тому же</i>
<b>in front of</b>	<i>перед, впереди</i>
<b>in spite of</b>	<i>несмотря на, невзирая на</i>
<b>instead of</b>	<i>вместо</i>

<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>
<b>into</b>	<i>в, на</i> (движение или направление внутрь, в сферу или область ч.-л.)
<b>like</b>	<i>подобно, как</i>
<b>near</b>	<i>возле, у, около</i>
<b>of</b>	1. (указывает на принадлежность; предложный оборот переводится род. п.) <i>the wall of the room стена комнаты</i> ; 2. <i>из</i> (указывает на отношение части и целого); 3. <i>о, об, относительно</i>
<b>on</b>	1. <i>на</i> (нахождение на поверхности); (то же <b>upon</b> ); 2. <i>на</i> (направление); (то же <b>upon</b> ); 3. <i>в</i> (временное значение); 4. <i>по, после</i> (последовательность наступления действий); 5. <i>в, на</i> (состояние, процесс, характер действия); 6. <i>из, на, в, по, у</i> (основание, причина, источник); 7. <i>о, об, относительно, касательно</i>
<b>opposite</b>	<i>против, напротив</i>
<b>out of</b>	<i>вне, за, из</i>
<b>over</b>	1. <i>над, выше</i> ; 2. <i>по ту сторону, за, через</i> ; 3. <i>через, о; поверх, на; по, по всей поверхности</i> (характер движения); 4. <i>за, в течение</i> (промежуток времени, в течение которого происходит действие); 5. <i>свыше, сверх, больше</i> (количественное или числовое превышение)
<b>owing to</b>	<i>из-за, вследствие, по причине, благодаря</i>
<b>past</b>	1. <i>мимо</i> ; 2. <i>за, по ту сторону</i> ; 3. <i>после, за, спустя, более</i> (о времени)
<b>since</b>	<i>с, после, спустя</i>
<b>thanks to</b>	<i>благодаря</i>
<b>through</b>	1. <i>через, сквозь, по</i> (пространственные отношения); 2. <i>в течение, в продолжение</i> (временные отношения); 3. <i>по причине, вследствие, из-за, благодаря</i>
<b>throughout</b>	1. <i>через, по всему</i> ; 2. <i>в продолжение</i> (всего времени)
<b>till (until)</b>	<i>до, до тех пор, пока</i>

1	2
<b>to</b>	1. <i>к, в, на</i> (направление); 2. <i>на, до</i> (предел движения, расстояния, времени, количества); 3. a letter to a friend <i>письмо другу</i> (указание на лицо, по отношению к которому совершается действие; предложный оборот переводится дат. п.)
<b>toward (s)</b>	1. <i>к, по направлению к</i> ; 2. <i>к, около</i> (время)
<b>under</b>	1. <i>под, ниже</i> (положение одного предмета ниже другого, направление действия вниз); 2. <i>при, под, на</i> (условия, обстоятельства, при которых совершается действие)
<b>until</b>	см. <b>till</b>
<b>up</b>	1. <i>вверх, по, на</i> ; 2. <i>вдоль по; вглубь</i>
<b>up to</b>	<i>вплоть до</i>
<b>upon</b>	см. <b>on</b>
<b>with</b>	1. <i>с</i> (связь, совместность, согласованность); 2. to write with a pen <i>писать ручкой</i> (указание на предмет действия или орудие, при помощи которого совершается действие; предложный оборот переводится тв. п.); 3. <i>а, причем</i> (обстоятельство, сопутствующее действию): he fell asleep with his candle lit
<b>within</b>	1. <i>в, в пределах</i> ; 2. <i>в, внутри</i> ; 3. <i>не далее (как), не позднее, в течение</i>
<b>without</b>	1. <i>без</i> ; 2. <i>вне, за</i> ; 3. <i>без того, чтобы</i> (перед герундием или отглагольным сущ.)

Предлоги **направления** и **движения** обозначают движение по направлению к какому-либо предмету, внутрь замкнутого пространства, от одного лица к другому или из одного места в другое, из замкнутого пространства:

*to the table* – **к** столу;

*into the room* – **в** комнату;

*from (off) the table* – **со** стола;

*from Kiev to Moscow* – **из** Киева **в** Москву;

*out of the bag* – **из** портфеля.

Предлоги времени **at, on, in**.

Чаще всего предлог **‘at’** используется, когда речь идёт о конкретном моменте в течение дня:

*at 6 o'clock (at six o'clock);*

*at 10:30 (at half past ten OR at ten thirty);*

*at 7:15 (at quarter past seven OR at seven fifteen);*

*at 11:45 (at quarter to twelve OR at eleven forty-five);*

*at midnight* – в полночь;

*at lunchtime* – в обеденное время;

*at sunrise* – на восходе солнца;

*at dawn / at the crack/break of dawn* – на рассвете, при первых лучах солнца;

*at sunset* – на закате;

*at the weekend* – в выходные, например, в эти выходные;

*at weekends* – по выходным;

*at the moment / at present* – в настоящее время;

*at the same time* – в одно и то же время;

*at Christmas* – в период Рождественских праздников.

Предлог **‘on’** служит для обозначения уже более продолжительного периода времени, чем предлог **‘at’**.

*on Sunday* – в воскресенье;

*on Sundays* – по воскресеньям;

*on Sunday morning* – в воскресенье утром;

*on Sunday evening* – вечером в воскресенье;

*on 21 July (on the twenty-first of July);*

*on New Year's Eve* } в канун Нового года;

*on New Year's Day* }

*on Christmas Day* – в Рождество (в конкретный день Рождества);

*on my birthday* – в мой день рождения.

Предлог **‘in’** употребляется, когда речь идет о месяцах, временах года, годах, и т.д.

*in July, in (the) summer, in 1997, in the 1980s;*

*in the Middle Ages* – в Средневековье;

*in the past, in (the) future.*

## Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Translate the sentences paying attention to the place and direction prepositions.**

### **a) at:**

1. Let's meet *at* the bus stop.
2. The teacher is standing *at* the blackboard.
3. Two tables are *at* the window, and the third one is *at* the door.
4. We were *at* the airport *at* half past six.
5. My mother works *at* school.
6. *At* the lesson we do many exercises.
7. When I am *at* home I have no time for watching TV.
8. *At* work I have to meet many people.
9. Usually he is *at* the office from 9 to 11 a.m.
10. We were *at* Mike's house yesterday evening.
11. His signature is *at* the bottom of the page.
12. I saw him yesterday *at* the end of the street.
13. The car stopped *at* the traffic lights.
14. We had a good rest *at* the seaside.
15. I don't see anything *at* the top of the envelope.

### **b) in:**

1. We visited several countries *in* Europe last year; we were *in* Spain, *in* France, *in* Italy and *in* the South of Germany.
2. I'd like to live *in* the country.
3. He lived *in* London *in* a small house, nearly *in* the center of the city.
4. All things were packed *in* boxes and *in* small parcels.
5. When walking *in* the park I have a feeling of being *in* a village.
6. He was sitting comfortably *in* an armchair.
7. They stood *in* queue for tickets.
8. I always look so funny *in* photographs.
9. You should stay *in* bed, you are seriously ill.
10. He is *in* hospital now.

### **c) on:**

1. He is lying *on* the sofa all day long.
2. The vase stood *on* the top of the bookcase.
3. My native town is *on* the north coast of the Pacific Ocean.
4. Many cities *on* the Volga are very ancient.
5. *On* the right-hand side of the street there is a big shop.
6. I live *on* the ground floor of a multi-storey building.
7. They lived *on* a small island in the Indian Ocean.

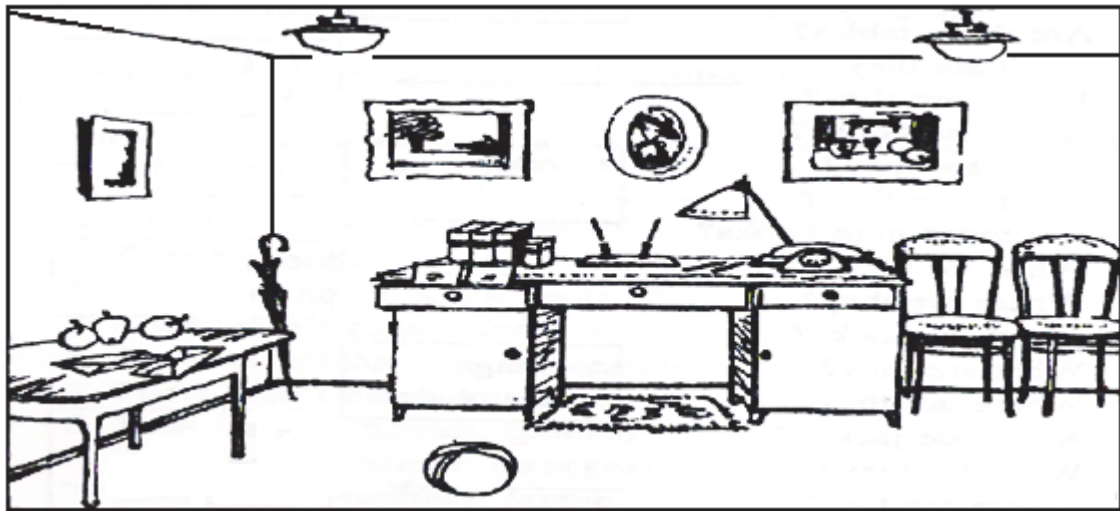
8. *On* the way to my office I often meet my friends.
9. We were *on* a farm last month and are going to visit it again.
10. The address must be *on* the front of the envelope.

**d) другие предлоги:**

1. A car stopped *in front of* the house.
2. Please, go *in front of* me.
3. The boy was hiding *behind* a tree.
4. There was an orchard *behind* the house.
5. Walk close *behind* me.
6. Sit *beside* me.
7. The hotel is *near* the station.
8. My house is *by* the river.
9. We passed *under* a bridge.
10. It was 10° *below* zero.
11. The people *in* the rooms *below* are very noisy.
12. There was light *above (over)* my head.
13. The Mediterranean Sea is *between* Europe and Africa.
14. I saw him *among* the people *near* the bus stop.
15. He will go *to* America next year.
16. She goes *to* school every morning.
17. I usually go *to* bed *at* 11 o'clock.
18. He was taken *to* hospital yesterday.
19. *In* the evening I usually go *to* the park *near* my house.
20. Don't wait outside! Come *into* the house!
21. I took it *out of* the water.
22. He was walking slowly *towards* the sea.
23. He travelled *from* Rome *to* London.
24. He jumped *from* the wall.
25. Bees fly *from* flower *to* flower.
26. The ball rolled *off* the bench.
27. He got *off* the train.
28. I live *across* the road.
29. They went *across* the field.
30. He jumped *over* the wall.
31. The road went *through* a forest.
32. The burglar came *through* the window.
33. We went *along* the street.
34. There are trees *all along* the road.
35. We were walking *about* the town.
36. He has travelled *around* the world.
37. Ships moved *up and down* the river.
38. He came *up to* me.



**Ex. 2. Look at the picture below and answer the following questions.**



1. Are the pictures on the wall? – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Is the reading-lamp on the chair? – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Is the ball in the middle of the room? – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Are the apples on the table? – \_\_\_\_\_
5. Are the lights on the ceiling? – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Are the note-books in the drawer? – \_\_\_\_\_
7. Are the books on the desk? – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Is the telephone on the floor? – \_\_\_\_\_
9. Is the umbrella in the corner? – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Are the envelopes in the drawer? – \_\_\_\_\_
11. Are the pens and pencils on the desk? – \_\_\_\_\_
12. Is the rug under the desk? – \_\_\_\_\_
13. Is the table near the wall? – \_\_\_\_\_
14. Are the chairs behind the desk? – \_\_\_\_\_
15. Where is the desk? – \_\_\_\_\_
16. Where are the pictures? – \_\_\_\_\_
17. Where is the umbrella? – \_\_\_\_\_
18. Where is the table? – \_\_\_\_\_
19. Where are the apples? – \_\_\_\_\_
20. Where is the telephone? – \_\_\_\_\_
21. Where are the note-books? – \_\_\_\_\_
22. Where are the envelopes? – \_\_\_\_\_
23. Where is the ball? – \_\_\_\_\_
24. Where are the chairs? – \_\_\_\_\_
25. Where are the lights? – \_\_\_\_\_
26. Where is the reading-lamp? – \_\_\_\_\_
27. Where are the pens and pencils? – \_\_\_\_\_
28. Where is the rug? – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Insert the appropriate place and direction prepositions.**

1. My brother works \_\_\_\_\_ the factory.
2. I will be \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting tomorrow morning.
3. Go \_\_\_\_\_ the library!
4. My father returned \_\_\_\_\_ Moscow yesterday.
5. Your dictionary is \_\_\_\_\_ the shelf.
6. I didn't go \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture yesterday, because I had to go \_\_\_\_\_ hospital.
7. His table is \_\_\_\_\_ the window, mine is \_\_\_\_\_ the door.
8. He was sitting \_\_\_\_\_ the sofa and suddenly he stood up and ran \_\_\_\_\_ the room.
9. I'll be \_\_\_\_\_ the library all day tomorrow.
10. She came \_\_\_\_\_ the room and sat \_\_\_\_\_ the chair.

**Ex. 4. Translate the prepositions in the brackets.**

1. Put the letter (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
2. Take the letter (*из*) \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
3. The ship sailed (*по направлению к*) \_\_\_\_\_ the south.
4. He returned (*из*) \_\_\_\_\_ Kiev.
5. You'd better get (*из*) \_\_\_\_\_ the tram (*на*) \_\_\_\_\_ the next stop.
6. They built a new bridge (*через*) \_\_\_\_\_ the river.
7. A lamp was hanging (*над*) \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
8. She looked (*через*) \_\_\_\_\_ the window.
9. Let us walk (*вдоль*) \_\_\_\_\_ the shore.
10. The steamer went (*вверх по*) \_\_\_\_\_ the river.
11. He walked (*по*) \_\_\_\_\_ the garden.
12. I usually go (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ the Institute (*по*) \_\_\_\_\_ the street which leads (*от*) \_\_\_\_\_ my house (*до*) \_\_\_\_\_ the main building of the Institute.
13. He studies (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ the University and lives (*возле*) \_\_\_\_\_ it.
14. It takes me 10 minutes to get (*до*) \_\_\_\_\_ my office.
15. He went (*из*) \_\_\_\_\_ the room, walked (*вдоль по*) \_\_\_\_\_ the corridor, then went (*вверх по*) \_\_\_\_\_ the stairs, looked (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ the laboratory and stopped (*перед*) \_\_\_\_\_ the time-table.

**Ex. 5. Translate the sentences paying attention to the time prepositions.**

**a) at:**

1. I usually get up *at* 6 o'clock and go to bed *at* eleven.
2. The lesson began *at* a quarter past eight.
3. He came late *at* night, probably *at* midnight or even later.
4. Usually we all meet *at* lunch time.
5. I always stay *at* home *at* the week-end.
6. We were in Moscow *at* Christmas.

7. I can't help you *at* the moment.
8. *At* present there are 9 faculties *at* our University.
9. He is going on business trip *at* the end of January.
10. *At* the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century people knew nothing about computers.
11. I need a really good reason to wake up *at* the crack of dawn, otherwise I'll sleep till noon.
12. – You should've told everyone about your plan *at* breakfast. – I should have, but I didn't. Now what? ... Ok, I'll announce it *at* dinner.
13. The meeting had been scheduled for Monday *at* 9:00 am. Hans was there *at* 9 o'clock sharp. As for Raquel, she showed up *at* 9:20.
14. – I don't sleep very well *at* night. What should I do? – I've heard that rubbing your belly in circles clockwise and then counter-clockwise really helps.
15. – Are you doing anything special *at* the weekend? – Not really. Any suggestions?

**b) in:**

1. He was born *in* 1964, *in* April.
2. The TV was invented *in* the 20<sup>th</sup> century.
3. *In* summer we usually go to the South.
4. I will return *in* a few minutes.
5. See you *in* a week's time.
6. I read newspapers *in* the morning.
7. I am always busy *in* the afternoon.
8. *In* the evening we usually go to the theatre or watch TV.
9. You will get all the necessary information *in* the end.
10. He will finish school *in* 2 years.
11. – Did people have the Internet *in* the seventies? – Yes, they did. And they had iPhones even earlier ... *in* the sixties. – Seriously? – Absolutely!
12. You've made so many mistakes *in* the past, but I'm ready to forgive you.
13. There are so many holidays *in* December.

**c) on:**

1. He is coming *on* Sunday, *on* the third of May.
2. I saw him *on* Friday morning.
3. He promised to have dinner with us *on* Sunday afternoon.
4. It happened *on* Christmas day.
5. *On* receiving your letter I telephoned to your brother.
6. *On* coming home I began to work.
7. You should've known by now that your aunt has no sense of humor. A harmless joke *on* 1 April can put her on edge.

8. What can be more seductive than a cup of hot chocolate *on* a cold winter morning?

9. She was born *on* a cold December morning.

**d) другие предлоги:**

1. I've lived *in* this house *for* 20 years.
2. We watched the game *for* 2 hours.
3. Are you going *away for* the weekend?
4. *During* the last three months he has made great progress *in* English.
5. It must have been raining *during* the night.
6. They arrived *before* holiday.
7. It happened *before* the war.
8. This event took place *in* the 2<sup>nd</sup> century BC.
9. Let's wait *till* tomorrow.
10. I'll wait *until* 5 o'clock.
11. Children *under* 16 are not allowed to see this film.
12. It has been known *from* ancient times *to* our days.
13. I was *at* the station *from* 3 *to* 5 waiting *for* you.
14. You should have done it *by* Monday.
15. *By* the time I finished my work I was very tired.
16. We will have finished the experiment *by* tomorrow.
17. I have been working *since* 12 o'clock.
18. I haven't seen him *since* childhood.
19. He works *from* eight *till* four. Tomorrow he'll work *from* ten.
20. He studied English *from* the age *of* five.
21. Come *to* me *after* 2 o'clock.
22. Everything got quiet *after* midnight.
23. It is half *past* three.
24. Payment will be made *within* 10 days.
25. We met him the day *before* yesterday.

**Ex. 6. Insert the appropriate prepositions 'in', 'on', 'for', 'at', 'by'.**

1. He was born \_\_\_\_\_ 1930, I think \_\_\_\_\_ May.
2. Our train stops here only \_\_\_\_\_ 5 minutes.
3. I can give you this book \_\_\_\_\_ a short time.
4. The train arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 6 o'clock.
5. Do you go to work \_\_\_\_\_ Thursdays?
6. I hope he will come back \_\_\_\_\_ five days.
7. I'll be back \_\_\_\_\_ a few minutes.
8. I think I'll have finished my report \_\_\_\_\_ next Friday.
9. I can't do it \_\_\_\_\_ an hour.
10. He read the story \_\_\_\_\_ two hours.

**Ex. 7. Translate the time prepositions in brackets.**

1. He will go abroad (*на*) \_\_\_\_\_ two months.
2. Everything must be ready (*к*) \_\_\_\_\_ 5 o'clock.
3. I lived in the South (*в течение*) \_\_\_\_\_ 10 years.
4. He was sleeping (*в течение*) \_\_\_\_\_ the whole lecture.
5. – Can you finish this work (*к*) \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday? – No, but I can finish it (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ Monday or (*к*) \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning of February.
6. I expect to get an answer from him (*через*) \_\_\_\_\_ 2 days.
7. The accident took place (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas day.
8. I haven't met him (*с*) \_\_\_\_\_ childhood.
9. I will stay here (*до*) \_\_\_\_\_ the evening.
10. Applicants seeking admission should be (*до*) \_\_\_\_\_ 35 years old.

**Ex. 8. Translate the sentences with the compound prepositions.**

1. *According to* the schedule the steamer arrives at 7 o'clock.
2. He acted *in accordance with* our instructions.
3. It can be done *by means of* heat treatment.
4. We achieved good results *due to* hard work.
5. We couldn't get there *owing to* the storm.
6. *Thanks to* his help we could finish the work in time.
7. Your essay is good *except for* a few mistakes.
8. We finished the work in time *in spite of* all the difficulties.
9. We bought a new car *instead of* the old one.
10. I am sending you this letter *in addition to* my telegram.
11. The post-office is just *in front of* our house.

**Ex. 9. Translate the compound prepositions in brackets.**

1. (*Согласно*) \_\_\_\_\_ the received information, the delegation is to arrive tomorrow.
2. The production of machinery in our country has greatly increased (*по сравнению с*) \_\_\_\_\_ the pre-war period.
3. You should walk (*до*) \_\_\_\_\_ the next turning.
4. You can achieve much (*благодаря*) \_\_\_\_\_ your good knowledge of English.
5. Your English is excellent (*за исключением*) \_\_\_\_\_ pronunciation.
6. We worked out our program (*в соответствии с*) \_\_\_\_\_ preset plans.
7. (*В дополнение к*) \_\_\_\_\_ the main task you'll have to solve some additional problems.
8. (*Что касается*) \_\_\_\_\_ me, I know nothing about it.
9. I cannot do it (*из-за*) \_\_\_\_\_ bad working conditions.

10. (В случае) \_\_\_\_\_ emergency you may use E-mail.
11. There is a beautiful garden (перед) \_\_\_\_\_ our house.
12. (Несмотря на) \_\_\_\_\_ hard living conditions he worked much and became a well-known scientist.
13. Give me a new dictionary (вместо) \_\_\_\_\_ the old one.
14. Every person in our country has the right to education (не зависимо от) \_\_\_\_\_ his social origin or his finance.
15. We had to put off our journey (из-за) \_\_\_\_\_ rainy weather.
16. (Благодаря) \_\_\_\_\_ your help all the experiments were carried out successfully.
17. I'd like to settle down all the problems (до) \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning of the conference.
18. (Невзирая на) \_\_\_\_\_ threats he investigated the criminal case thoroughly.
19. (Если бы не) \_\_\_\_\_ you, I couldn't have done the work in time.
20. In big ports ships are unloaded (при помощи) \_\_\_\_\_ cranes.

**Ex. 10. Translate the sentences with the case prepositions.**

1. The roof *of* the house was painted green.
2. I showed the picture *to* my brother.
3. The letter was signed *by* the director.
4. He cut the letter *with* a knife.
5. The lecture *on* civil law will be tomorrow.
6. He wrote a book *about* the judicial system *of* the USA.
7. The garden is surrounded *with* a high wall.
8. The port is connected *by* a system *of* waterways *with* several rivers and lakes.
9. The magazine was illustrated *with* very good pictures.
10. My brother lives on fourth floor *of* a big house in the center *of* the town.
11. The plant is equipped *with* machinery made *by* foreign firms.
12. I gave several books *on* history *to* my friend.
13. The child was washed *by* his mother *with* soap and warm water.
14. The lecture *on* international situation will take place tomorrow.
15. Yesterday he bought several books *on* transportation.
16. I must send a letter *to* my mother.
17. I explained everything *to* him and don't want to speak *about* it anymore.
18. Your report *about* the new discovery was rather exhaustive.
19. What are you talking *about*?
20. The house was destroyed *by* fire.
21. She paid ten roubles *for* this book.
22. His watch is made *of* gold.
23. My brother felt so bad that I sent *for* a doctor.

24. He was killed *by* lightning.
25. I can't write *with* this pen, it's very bad.
26. Whom was the theatre built *by*?
27. Wash your hands *with* warm water.
28. – Whom did you buy this book *for*? – I bought it *for* you.
29. He always illustrates his lectures *with* tables and diagrams.
30. – What is your case made *of*? – It's made *of* leather.
31. How much did you pay *for* your shoes?
32. Your shoes are made *of* very good leather.
33. Send *for* him immediately.
34. A thermometer is used *for* measuring temperature.
35. He telephoned *to* me yesterday.
36. What is your opinion *on* this subject?

**Ex. 11. Translate the sentences with prepositional phrases. Use dictionary if necessary.**

1. He *is about to* leave.
2. Labour law *above all* includes state and independent provisions.
3. His behaviour is tactless *above measure*.
4. She is *above suspicion*.
5. *After all*, it is *of no importance*.
6. I'll do it *the day after tomorrow*.
7. They came *soon after* you left.
8. The city was *named after* its first-builders.
9. The examination has already begun, *come along*.
10. How *are you getting along*?
11. They don't *get along*.
12. He finished school *at the age of* sixteen.
13. – Are you tired? – *Not at all*.
14. He is not old *at all*.
15. I'll try to do it *at all costs*.
16. Let's discuss it *at dinner* or *at lunch*.
17. He lives *at the experience of* his parents.
18. It happened either *at the end of* the 19<sup>th</sup> or *at the beginning of* the 20<sup>th</sup> century.
19. *At first* I didn't recognize him, but when I saw him next time he came up to me *at once* and said he could recognize me *at first sight*.
20. I am *at your service*.
21. I'll stay *at home* all day long or *at least* till 6 p.m.
22. *At last* they began to work; *at any rate* they stopped chatting.
23. I met him *the day before yesterday*.

24. I was officially introduced to him only yesterday, but I had known him *long before*.

25. I *am* always *behind* my group, but I hope *to catch up with* it next term.

26. It's *beyond my expectations*, it's just *beyond me*.

27. It happened *by accident*.

28. You should learn the poem *by heart*.

29. I never travel *by sea* or *by air*; I prefer travelling *by train* or *by bus*.

30. These devices are driven *by means of* electricity.

31. I'll do it *by all means*.

32. *By no means* switch the gas on!

33. I've done it *by mistake*.

34. *By the way*, this work should be done gradually, or *step by step*, it being hard and responsible *at the same time*.

35. He was walking *up and down the stairs*.

36. You should *bring down* the price for these goods.

37. Don't *turn* it *upside down*.

38. I haven't seen him *for ages*.

39. *For example*, you may *go for a walk* or have a rest *for a time*.

40. He has been well-known *for years* and is the most popular writer *for the time being*.

41. You should read this book *from the beginning to the end*.

42. They come to us *from time to time*.

43. They are making this dreadful noise *from day to day, from morning till night*.

44. *From my point of view* it's a very difficult subject.

45. I always do everything *in time*.

46. You'll know everything *in due course*.

47. *In the meantime* he was drawing something on the sand.

48. *In conclusion* I would like to add some more facts.

49. *In fact*, he made many attempts to solve the problem *in question*, but all *in vain*.

50. I like literature *in general*, but I prefer adventure stories *in particular*.

51. He finished the work *in the long run*.

52. *In my opinion* you should spend more time *in the open air*.

53. The letter is written *in English*, but I don't speak in English and cannot translate it.

54. It is *in your interests* to study the subject *in full*; *in any case* it will do you a lot of good.

55. This fact must *be taken into account*.

56. He *got into the habit* of smoking at an early age.

57. It all happened *on account of* your carelessness.

58. It's about 5 mln roubles *on the average*.



59. *On behalf of* our company we congratulate you on your success.
60. He went to Moscow *on business*.
61. I'll do it *on condition* that you'll satisfy all our requirements.
62. *On the one hand* it was done on purpose; *on the other hand* they did it *out of necessity*.
63. They change some conditions *on demand on the ground* that they cannot be fulfilled *on the whole*.
64. This article deals with various atmospheric phenomena, weather conditions *and so on*.
65. It was very impolite *on the part of* my friend.
66. I haven't heard of him *of late*.
67. She is *out of danger* now.
68. All our devices are either *out of date* or *out of use*, some are *out of order*.
69. I did it *out of pity*.
70. He travelled *all over world*.
71. He tried to do it *over and over* again.
72. The meeting *is over*.
73. We have fine weather *all the year round*.
74. *To my disappointment* his ideas failed.
75. We'll pace the arm-chair *to the right* or *to the left* of the window.
76. The question is now *under consideration*.
77. The road has been *under repair* for three months.
78. *Under the circumstances* we can't satisfy your requirements.
79. *Under the contract* the work must be done within three weeks.
80. We need *up-to-date* equipment.
81. This phenomenon was completely unknown *up to the present time*.
82. I *was up* at six o'clock.
83. It's *up to you* to decide.
84. Your time *is up*.
85. *What's up?*
86. The port of destination was *within reach, at least within sight*.
87. The nearest village was *within three miles* of the station.
88. *Without doubt*, he is the brightest student in our group.
89. Try to do it *without fail*.
90. It *goes without saying*.
91. I cannot *do without* it.
92. *Once, upon a time* there lived a King and a Queen.

## ТЕМА 11. СОЮЗЫ (THE CONJUNCTIONS)

Союзы – служебные слова, которые устанавливают связь между словами, словосочетаниями, частями предложения и предложениями (табл. 11.1).

Таблица 11.1

Основные союзы и союзные слова

Союз	Значение	Союз	Значение
<b>after</b>	<i>после того как</i>	<b>once</b>	<i>раз уж, стоит только ... как (и)</i>
<b>although</b>	<i>см. though</i>	<b>or</b>	<i>или, иначе</i>
<b>and</b>	<i>и, а, но</i>	<b>(or) else</b>	<i>в противном случае, иначе</i>
<b>as</b>	<i>когда, в то время как; так как; хотя</i>	<b>otherwise</b>	<i>в противном случае, иначе</i>
<b>as ... as</b>	<i>так же ... как и</i>	<b>provided (that)</b>	<i>при условии если</i>
<b>as far as</b>	<i>поскольку, насколько</i>	<b>providing (that)</b>	<i>при условии если</i>
<b>as if (as though)</b>	<i>как будто, как если бы</i>	<b>seeing</b>	<i>поскольку, так как</i>
<b>as long as (so long as)</b>	<i>(до тех пор) пока, если только, при условии что</i>	<b>since</b>	<i>с тех пор как; так как; хотя</i>
<b>as soon as</b>	<i>как только</i>	<b>so</b>	<i>так что, итак</i>
<b>as though</b>	<i>см. as if</i>	<b>so as</b>	<i>чтобы, для того чтобы</i>
<b>as well as</b>	<i>так же, как (и)</i>	<b>so long as</b>	<i>см. as long as</i>
<b>because</b>	<i>потому что, так как</i>	<b>so ... that</b>	<i>так что</i>
<b>before</b>	<i>прежде чем</i>	<b>still</b>	<i>тем не менее, все же</i>
<b>both ... and</b>	<i>и ... и, как ... так и</i>	<b>supposing</b>	<i>если, предположим (что); допустим (что)</i>
<b>but</b>	<i>но, а, однако, тем не менее</i>	<b>than</b>	<i>чем</i>
<b>either ... or</b>	<i>или ... или</i>	<b>that</b>	<i>что</i>
<b>for</b>	<i>так как, ибо; ввиду того, что</i>	<b>that is why</b>	<i>вот почему; поэтому</i>

Продолжение табл. 11.1

Союз	Значение	Союз	Значение
<b>hardly (scarcely) ... when</b>	<i>едва только ... как</i>	<b>thence</b>	см. <b>hence</b>
<b>hence (thence)</b>	<i>следовательно</i>	<b>therefore</b>	<i>поэтому</i>
<b>how</b>	<i>как</i>	<b>though (although)</b>	<i>хотя, несмотря на; даже если бы; хотя бы</i>
<b>however</b>	<i>однако</i>	<b>thus</b>	<i>таким образом</i>
<b>if</b>	<i>если, если бы; ли</i>	<b>till (until)</b>	<i>до тех пор пока</i>
<b>in case</b>	<i>если; в случае если</i>	<b>unless</b>	<i>если только не, разве только</i>
<b>in order</b>	<i>для того чтобы</i>	<b>until</b>	см. <b>till</b>
<b>in order that</b>	<i>для того чтобы</i>	<b>what</b>	<i>что</i>
<b>lest</b>	<i>чтобы не; как бы не</i>	<b>when</b>	<i>когда</i>
<b>neither ... nor</b>	<i>ни ... ни</i>	<b>where</b>	<i>где</i>
<b>nevertheless</b>	<i>тем не менее</i>	<b>whereas</b>	<i>тогда как; поскольку</i>
<b>no sooner ... than</b>	<i>как только, едва только ... как</i>	<b>whether</b>	<i>ли</i>
<b>nor</b>	<i>и ... не; также ... не</i>	<b>which</b>	<i>который</i>
<b>not only ... but also</b>	<i>не только ... но и</i>	<b>while</b>	<i>в то время как, пока</i>
<b>notwithstanding</b>	<i>несмотря на</i>	<b>who</b>	<i>кто, который</i>
<b>now (that)</b>	<i>теперь когда, поскольку</i>	<b>whose</b>	<i>чей</i>
<b>on condition (that)</b>	<i>при условии если</i>	<b>yet</b>	<i>тем не менее, все же</i>

Союзы в английском предложении выполняют соединительную функцию и называются сочинительными, если вводят сложносочиненное предложение; подчинительными, если вводят сложноподчиненное предложение.

## Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Translate the sentences with the compose conjunctions 'and', 'but', 'or', 'while', 'as well as', 'whereas'.**

1. The contract was concluded on the 15<sup>th</sup> of May *and* the sellers chartered a vessel immediately.
2. We agree to the terms of payment *but* object to the time of delivery.
3. This book is not very interesting *but* it is valuable as a historical document.
4. The village is about seven *or* eight kilometers from here.
5. Hurry up *or* you will miss the train.
6. Some people like strong coffee, *whereas* others don't.
7. The function of the Parliament is to make laws, *whereas* the government is to execute laws.
8. Ann works hard at her English *while* Kate doesn't.
9. Some experiments are successful *while* others are not.
10. *While* scientists were satisfied with the new material, it was difficult to work with.
11. We have received your telegram *as well as* your letter.
12. This instrument may be used for direct current *as well as* for alternating current.
13. They investigated the new substances *as well as* their components and compounds.

**Ex. 2. Translate the sentences with the conjunctions 'either ... or', 'neither ... nor', 'both ... and', 'not only ... but also'.**

1. The manager is *either* at the office *or* at the laboratory.
2. You may *either* come *or* ring me up.
3. This instrument can be used to measure *either* direct *or* alternating current.
4. The lecture will be *either* here *or* in the adjacent room.
5. You may *either* support *or* reject our proposals; you are kindly requested to put forward your own ones as well.
6. Two hundred years ago there were *neither* electric lamps, *nor* electric motors, telephone *nor* radio.
7. In an isolated system energy can *neither* be created *nor* destroyed.
8. He could *neither* speak *nor* move.
9. She moved slowly looking *neither* left *nor* right.
10. *Neither* students *nor* teachers were present at the conference.
11. This book is *both* interesting *and* instructive.
12. *Both* practical *and* theoretical work is very important for scientific research.

13. *Both* his friends *and* relatives tried to prevent him from taking that dangerous step.

14. Much was said *both* in favour of *and* against the proposal.

15. *Both* iron *and* coal can be found among natural resources of our district.

16. We object *not only* to the terms of payment, *but also* to the time of delivery.

17. The scientist *not only* made a number of experiments, *but also* developed a new theory.

18. *Not only* people, *but also* animals and plants suffer from environmental pollution.

19. I read *not only* fiction, *but also* scientific journals and other specialized literature.

20. The suggestion sounded *not only* strange *but also* quite unexpected.

**Ex. 3. Insert with the right conjunction.**

1. We decided to do our work separately \_\_\_\_\_ discuss each other's part when it was ready (*and, but*).

2. We tried to do our work together \_\_\_\_\_ soon decided to divide it for each to do his part separately (*and, but*).

3. The war took away all his friends \_\_\_\_\_ relatives. He remained quite alone without friends \_\_\_\_\_ relatives (*and, or*).

4. I couldn't find an answer to my question \_\_\_\_\_ in books \_\_\_\_\_ in lecture halls (*either ... or, neither ... nor*).

5. \_\_\_\_\_ the books I read \_\_\_\_\_ the people I spoke to could give me an answer to my question (*Either ... or, Neither ... nor*).

6. Much was said \_\_\_\_\_ in favour of \_\_\_\_\_ against the project (*neither ... nor, both ... and*).

7. Nothing was said \_\_\_\_\_ in favour of \_\_\_\_\_ against the project (*neither ... nor, either ... or*).

8. He spoke of the project in a round way \_\_\_\_\_ in favour of \_\_\_\_\_ against it (*either ... or, neither ... nor, both ... and*).

9. We study various substances \_\_\_\_\_ their properties (*as well as, while*).

10. Some substances are subject to heat treatment \_\_\_\_\_ others are not (*as well as, while*).

**Ex. 4. Translate the sentences paying attention to the different meanings of the subordinate conjunctions. Mind the difference between the adverb and the preposition.**

**a) союз as** – так как, когда, в то время как, по мере того как, (предлог **as** – как, в качестве); **as long as, as soon as, as if, as though, as ... as, not so ... as:**

1. I'll do it *as* you told me.
2. *As* I have not read the book, I cannot tell you anything about it.
3. *As* I was coming here I met my brother.
4. *As* winter approached the day became shorter.
5. *As long as* you insist on these terms, we shall not be able to come to an agreement with you.
6. He will do it *as soon as* he comes home.
7. I will send you a telegram *as soon as* we arrive.
8. She looks *as if* she were ill.
9. You answer *as though* you did not know this rule.
10. I get up *as early as* you do.
11. This book is *not so* interesting *as* I thought.
12. He promised to help her *as long as* she lived.
13. *As* you probably know, all bodies possess weight.
14. *As* I was not ready I couldn't pass the exam.
15. *As* I rang him up he was busy with visitors.
16. *As* I have told you, you should not treat him as a child.

**b) союз since** – с тех пор как, так как, (предлог **since** – с; наречие **since** – с тех пор):

1. What have you been doing *since* I last saw you?
2. *Since* the documents have not arrived we can't load these goods.
3. *Since* they haven't arrived yet, we cannot open the meeting.
4. The art of wood-carving has been known *since* ancient times.
5. The laser technique has greatly changed *since* its initial use.
6. He left Moscow last year and I haven't met him *since*.
7. *Since* the car is out of order we'll go by train.
8. *Since* you are ill I'll do the work for you.
9. *Since* the days of Peter I many reforms have been carried out in our country.

**c) союз for** – ибо, так как, (предлог **for** – для, из-за, за, в течение); союз **because** – потому что, так как, (предлог **because** – из-за):

1. He walked quickly, *for* he was in a great hurry.
2. This device cannot be called a machine, *for* it has no moving parts.
3. We will go to the lecture on mechanics, *for* it seems to be interesting.

4. This instrument is reliable enough, *for* it has been tested several times.
5. I am at a loss, *for* I don't know what to do.
6. He was working at that design *for* 2 days.
7. Substances *for* experiments should be chosen and tested thoroughly.
8. I have brought some articles *for* you to translate.
9. All progressive people fight *for* peace.
10. It is *for* this reason that we cannot finish the work.
11. I cannot do it *because* I am very busy.
12. I didn't come yesterday *because* I was ill.
13. She didn't go there *because* of the rain.
14. He didn't pass the exam *because* he wasn't ready.
15. He could not pass the exam *because* of illness.

**d) after** – *после, после того как* (союз, предлог, наречие); **before** – *до, перед, до того как, раньше* (союз, предлог, наречие); **when** – *когда* (союз или союзное слово); **while** – *в то время как, тогда как*; **until (till)** – *до, до того как*:

1. *After* the steamer had left the port, we sent a telegram to the buyers.
2. *After* the experiment was finished, its results were recorded and analyzed.
3. *After* he got home, somebody rang him up.
4. *After* the experiment it became clear that its results are of great significance.
5. What happened *after*?
6. The machines must be tested by our engineers *before* they are shipped.
7. Some scientific theories existed for many years *before* they were proved to be true or false.
8. I will leave Moscow *before* he returns.
9. We'll finish our work *before* 5 o'clock.
10. Have you been there *before*?
11. I'll speak to him *when* he comes.
12. I don't know *when* he will return.
13. *While* we are experimenting with substances we must be very careful.
14. *While* some people recognize this fact, others don't believe it to be true.
15. You may keep this book for a *while*.
16. I will stay here *until* I have finished my work.
17. Let's wait *till* the rain stops.
18. I'll wait *until* he comes.
19. I will work *till* dinner.
20. He didn't go there *until* after the war.

**e) if** – *если, ли*; **as if** – *как будто*; **in case** – *если, в случае*; **once** – *как только, если, однажды* (союз, наречие); **provided (providing)** – *если, при условии* (глагол to provide – обеспечивать, предоставлять); **unless** – *если не*; **whether** – *ли*:

1. He will get the letter tomorrow *if* you send it off now.
2. *If* I were you I would do it immediately.
3. *If* I only knew!
4. *If* you come in time we'll start the work at once.
5. He looked in the direction of the door *as if* he were waiting for somebody.
6. I don't know *if* he understands me.
7. He asked me *if* I had received his letter.
8. *If* I see him tomorrow I will ask him about it.
9. I will ask him about it *if* he comes.
10. I will ask him *if* he will come.
11. I cannot decide *whether* it is true or not.
12. *In case* you see him, tell him about it.
13. Put on your coat *in case* it rains.
14. I'll leave the message on the table *in case* he calls while I am out.
15. I left my address *in case* he should want to write to me.
16. I'll not open the window *in case* the wind breaks it out.
17. *Once* you have promised you must do it.
18. *Once* you show any fear the dog will attack you.
19. I saw him only *once*.
20. *Once* he understands he'll do his best.
21. We will be able to ship the goods at the end of May *provided* the order is received immediately.
22. The test will be carried out successfully *provided* all the equipment is in perfect order.
23. We can sign the agreement *providing* all our requirements are satisfied.
24. Ohm's law *provided* the possibility of determining the resistance provided the voltage and current are known.
25. They are *providing* us with necessary equipment *providing* we send them our specification.
26. The expedition *provided* with all the necessary equipment will start tomorrow.
27. They would finish the work in time, *provided* they had the necessary material.
28. The firm *providing* us with goods is on the verge of bankruptcy.
29. I will go there tomorrow *unless* I am too busy.
30. He never comes *unless* he is called.



**f) that** – *что, который, то что*; **so that** – *чтобы, так что*; **so ... that** – *такой ... что*; **such ... that** – *такой ... что*; **in order that** – *для того чтобы*; **though (although)** – *хотя*:

1. I am sure *that* he is right.
2. The difficulty is *that* it is impossible to carry out experiments in such a short time.
3. *That* the device stopped working surprised everyone.
4. They say *that* the report will be followed by a discussion.
5. Give us a material *that* can withstand very high temperature.
6. There is one reason *that* should be taken into account.
7. The most important uses of this device are those *that* provide greater reliability.
8. *That* Newton discovered the laws of motion is known to everybody.
9. I gave him the book *so that* he might study the subject at home.
10. The loading of the goods was completed on Monday *so that* on Tuesday the steamer was able to leave the port.
11. The sea was *so* stormy *that* the vessel could not leave the port.
12. I rang him up *so that* he knew about our arrival.
13. She is *so* beautiful *that* I can't find suitable words to describe her beauty.
14. Our students have passed all the examinations *so that* now they are free.
15. The device works automatically *so that* it can be easily controlled.
16. There was *such* a storm that day *that* the steamer could not leave the port.
17. She is *such* a beautiful girl *that* I can't put it into words.
18. There was *such* a noise outside *that* I couldn't get asleep till the morning.
19. The invitations were sent out early *in order that* the delegates might arrive in time for the conference.
20. The boxes were wrapped in waterproof paper *in order that* they didn't suffer from moisture.
21. *In order that* the atmosphere be clean we should not pollute it with harmful substances.
22. He knows English perfectly, *though* he has never been to England.
23. *Although* we are very busy, we'll try to come in time.
24. *Though* the matter is very simple, you'll have to work a great deal on it.
25. *Though* it's rather dangerous I will take the risk.

### Обзорные упражнения

**Ex. 5. Translate using the conjunctions 'as', 'because', 'because of', 'due to', 'for', 'since', 'both ... and', 'either ... or', 'neither ... nor'.**

1. As to the thesis it holds for more general cases of isomerization.
2. Beyond doubt, people exhibit both adaptive learning and analytical understanding, and any theory that fails to incorporate both aspects is surely going to be wrong some day.

3. This was both inevitable and entirely justified.
4. Do not do as I do but do as I tell you.
5. Thus as temperature is raised less CO<sub>2</sub> is formed.
6. He has neither the time nor the will to do it.
7. Nothing seemed to matter very much either at home or abroad.
8. My preliminary ideas, however, have not yet reached either a general solution, or a practical application.
9. In this regime, efficiency changes only slightly due to changes in T.
10. After due consideration of the paper we proceeded to other items of the agenda.
11. It is important for a designer to reflect on the application from the user's standpoint.
12. Stay with us for the weekend.
13. Blessed is he who expects nothing, for he shall never be disappointed.
14. Facts do not cease to exist because they are ignored. (*A. Huxley*)
15. And we forget because we must, and not because we will. (*M. Arnold*)

## ТЕМА 12. СЛОВА-ЗАМЕСТИТЕЛИ (THE NOUN-SUBSTITUTES)

В английском языке есть слова, которые употребляются в предложении, чтобы избежать повторения одного и того же слова. Такие слова называются **словами-заместителями**.

### 12.1. Местоимения 'one', 'ones'

Для замены существительного в единственном числе употребляется местоимение **one**. Местоимение **one** имеет форму множественного числа **ones**, когда оно употребляется вместо существительного во множественном числе:

*The new **laboratory** is equipped better than the old **one**.* – Новая лаборатория оборудована лучше, чем старая (лаборатория).

*There are many **diagrams** here.* – Здесь много диаграмм.

*The most interesting **ones** are on that wall.* – Самые интересные (диаграммы) – на той стене.

Местоимение **one** как слово-заместитель или совсем не переводится на русский язык или переводится тем существительным, которое оно заменяет.

Местоимение **one** как слово-заместитель не употребляется после притяжательных местоимений, т.к. в этом случае употребляется независимая форма притяжательных местоимений. Оно также не употребляется после существительных в притяжательном падеже:

*This experiment is more complicated than yours. It will take more time. – Этот опыт более сложен, чем ваш. На него потребуется больше времени.*

*Your drawing is good, but Victor's is much better. – Ваш чертеж хороший, но чертеж Виктора гораздо лучше.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 1. Translate sentences paying attention to the different meaning of the words 'one' and 'ones'.**

1. He has given me *one* of his English books.
2. *One* must always observe traffic rules.
3. He hasn't got a radio-set, he wants to buy *one*.
4. Those texts are too long, we need shorter *ones*.
5. I will have to buy a new coat for myself and another *one* for my sister.
6. *One* thing is clear to everybody: *one* must study hard if *one* wants to pass *one's* examinations.
7. This TV set is very expensive, show me another *one*.
8. *One* never knows what may happen.
9. What other methods will they use? The *one* they are using now is not very effective.
10. The more *one* studies, the more *one* knows.
11. These trucks are too small; they will need bigger *ones*.
12. This apparatus is more powerful than the *one* installed in our lab.
13. He is *one* of the most experienced drivers.
14. This article is much more difficult than the *one* we translated yesterday.
15. There is only *one* way to do it.
16. I have only *one* copy of this book.
17. We will have *one* exam this winter.
18. She made two rooms into a large *one*.
19. This year was *one* of great scientific achievements.
20. I lost my watch and had to buy a new *one*.
21. There are two vacant tables here. Which *one* will you occupy?
22. This time the news is better than the *one* you brought me before.
23. These shoes are too small for me, I need bigger *ones*.
24. *One* should not neglect his duty.
25. *One* hardly knows what to do under these circumstances.
26. *One* sees other people's faults sooner than his own *ones*.
27. When *one* doesn't know grammar, *one* often makes mistakes.
28. His flat is good, but the *one* you live in is much better.
29. I liked this story very much, but I disliked the *one* you told us yesterday.
30. *One* should take into consideration that this problem is very difficult.
31. *One* can find these data quite easily.

32. *One* must always keep *one's* word.
33. *One* shouldn't put off till tomorrow what *one* can do today.
34. *One* never knows what he can do.
35. *One* can speak over the telephone at any distance now.
36. Take *one* of these dictionaries, I will take another *one*.
37. *One* should always answer the letters immediately.
38. A just war is *one* that is fought against aggressors.
39. The foreign policy of this country is *one* aimed at creating a world without war.
40. All bodies of state power in our country are elected *ones*.
41. A just war is *one* that is aimed against any violation of the rights of a nation.
42. In the United States the district courts are the lowest *ones* in the federal court system.
43. British Parliament can make new laws and repeal old *ones*.
44. The British Government education programme is a very modern *one*.
45. The legislative function of a government consists of making new laws and alteration of the old *ones*.
46. *One* should work regularly if *one* wants to master English.
47. *One* is always pleased to meet old friends.
48. *One* must take into account that scenes of violence in films encourage crimes.
49. *One* must stop the dangerous influence of violence in books, films, television and other mass media.
50. Read *one* of these articles.
51. The new law radically differs from the old *one*.
52. This article is difficult, take another *one*.
53. There are many branches of law and labour law is *one* of them.
54. The British Constitutional system is *one* which has developed over the centuries.
55. In the English legal system a practicing lawyer must hold *one* of two professions.
56. *One* must remember that our educational system was formed still in pre-revolutionary time and is considered to be *one* of the best in the world.
57. The presidency of the US is *one* of the many governmental offices.

## 12.2. Местоимения '*that*', '*those*'

Для замены предшествующего существительного, за которым следует какой-либо предложный оборот, употребляется местоимение **that** (множественное число **those**):

*The speed of the TU-154 is greater than **that** of the TU-124. – Скорость самолета ТУ-154 больше, чем (скорость) самолета ТУ-124.*

Слова **that, those** в этой функции переводятся существительными, которые они заменяют, или не переводятся совсем.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 2. Translate sentences paying attention to the meanings of the words 'that' and 'those'.**

1. Give me *that* textbook please.
2. Give me *those* textbooks.
3. *That* was a hard day.
4. *Those* were hard days.
5. He thought *that* they would arrive tomorrow.
6. I will show you the engine *that* we must test.
7. The year on the Earth is twice as short as *that* on Mars.
8. *That* he is a good driver is a well-known fact.
9. I am afraid *that* he has fallen ill.
10. *That* he agreed to help his friends is only natural.
11. She said *that* she would come back in ten minutes.
12. The book *that* you gave me is very interesting.
13. The question *that* was discussed at the meeting yesterday is very important.
14. I don't know *that* man.
15. *Those* devices are out-of-date.
16. At *that* moment I heard some strange noise.
17. I was in *that* country 5 years ago.
18. My brother lives in *that* red house.
19. He bought *those* dictionaries in England.
20. *Those* are French magazines.
21. *Those* who are late won't be allowed to enter the laboratory.
22. These are my books and *those* are yours.
23. I didn't agree with him and *that* made him angry.
24. "I don't think we should do it." *That* is what he said.
25. The price of iron is higher than *that* of copper.
26. At our part there are some machine-tools similar to *those* described in the catalogue.
27. The main problem is *that* of finding a suitable place for our equipment.
28. The properties of gold are different from *those* of iron.
29. The problems of goods transportation are as important as *those* of their storage.
30. These articles are referred to in *those* journals.
31. He said *that* the question should be answered at once.
32. They knew *that* the experiment was a failure.

33. The remark *that* he made was very important.
34. *That* was the distance *that* they covered for half an hour.
35. I am afraid *that* he won't be able to come.
36. *That* he is a famous writer is known to everybody.
37. *That* he agreed to help his comrades is only natural.
38. *That* happened the year I graduated from the University.
39. They said *that* she would return in two days.
40. The question *that* was discussed at the conference is of great significance.
41. *That* was the thing *that* we needed.
42. The unit of mass and *that* of weight are different physical units.
43. The units of mass and *those* of weight are dealt with in this article.

### 12.3. Глагол *to do*

Для того чтобы избежать повторения глагола, употребляется глагол **to do** в соответствующей форме:

*Metals conduct electricity better than semiconductors do.* – Металлы проводят электричество лучше, чем полупроводники.

*The new computer works with greater precision than the old one did.* – Новый компьютер работает с большей точностью, чем (работал) старый.

### Тренировочные упражнения [5, с. 23]

#### **Ex. 3. Translate sentences with the word 'do' in different meanings.**

1. Our desires for what we do not have keep us from enjoying what we do have.
2. The book does not simply discuss what you must do, but gives you effective tools for how to do it.
3. Every force does its own job no matter how many other forces are acting.
4. The fact that the theory does not fail in some other cases is irrelevant.
5. It does indeed lead to problems.
6. People would agree that education has something to do with economic growth.
7. The difficulty has nothing to do with these changes.
8. The labour market does not work perfectly.
9. These effects can be done away with the help of the new model.
10. Only then did it work perfectly.
11. – Which of them lives in Kiev? – Ann does.
12. Do come to this conference.
13. They usually study English every day. And so does he.
14. Oxides and sulphides, some metal alloys as well as chemical elements are called semiconductors. All of them conduct electric current worse than met-

als do. It is from this fact that semiconductors derive their name. They do possess many wonderful properties. Some of the devices using semiconductors for example let electric current pass through them only in one direction and do not conduct it at all in the other. Russian scientists do all they can to make the utmost use of semiconductors.

15. A speed-up in the development of the chemical industry is a highly important factor in increasing the output of consumer goods at a much greater pace.

16. By 1965 it is planned to increase the output of automation to more than fivefold the present level.

17. In 1957 the output of consumer goods went up 13fold as compared with 1913. The variety of goods improved, and so did their quality.

18. Science has never before played such a role in the history of mankind as it does at present under socialism.

19. He stayed there much longer than he usually does.

### **Обзорные упражнения**

#### ***Ex. 4. Translate into Russian.***

1. It is no use to dispute the truth.
2. It was an underlying factor in their difference.
3. It is a purely ethical system.
4. It is difficult to see in what respect the programs are different.
5. We shall try to make it clear why we have this belief.
6. It concerns the conduct of human beings.
7. The danger of simplification is that it shelves complicated problems.
8. It is with these universal truths that metaphysics begins.
9. It results that this postulate is universally accepted.
10. The supposition was correct. It was scientifically proved.
11. Every man has three characters: that which he exhibits, that which he has, and that which he thinks he has.
12. The procedure that has been followed has many disadvantages.
13. The method investigated for solving these problems is that of combinatorial programming.
14. They did not ask us to prove that the symbols in question were effective.
15. That these patterns can be critical has been demonstrated by drawings.
16. It is necessary that the criteria should be made explicit.
17. It is imperative to good management that risks and costs be minimized.
18. We simply assume that names will be substituted by the expressions that define them.
19. This solution has the disadvantage that it is too complicated.
20. The Greeks in the fifth century B.C. had the idea that the Earth was a sphere.

21. One is never old to learn.
22. One should see the situation with one's own eyes.
23. The reduce problem has the same structure as the original one.
24. The problem to be solved is fundamentally a mathematical one.
25. One may postulate that this hypothesis hold under the circumstances.
26. The use of an analogue computer permits one to obtain such records quite rapidly.
27. Going one step further, a complementary operator might be added.
28. As one turn the pages one is impressed by two aspects of the work.
29. Such an overall approach is obviously a long-term one.
30. The largest countries are not as specialized as the smaller ones.

### ТЕМА 13. ГЛАГОЛ (THE VERB)

Глагол – это часть речи, которая обозначает действие или состояние лица или предмета. Глагол отвечает на вопросы: *что делает лицо (предмет)? что делается с лицом (предметом)?*

**Формы** английского глагола делятся на личные и неличные:

1. Личные формы глагола выражают лицо, число, наклонение, время, залог. Сюда относятся формы глаголов во всех лицах единственного и множественного числа во всех временах активного и пассивного залога в изъявительном и сослагательном наклонении. Они служат в предложении сказуемым и согласуются с подлежащим в лице и числе.

2. Неличные формы глагола – инфинитив (the Infinitive), герундий (the Gerund) и причастие (the Participle), в отличие от личных форм, выражают действие без указания лица, числа и наклонения. Поэтому они не могут быть в предложении сказуемым.

По своему **значению** и **функции** в предложении глаголы делятся на смысловые, модальные, глаголы-связки и вспомогательные.

1. Смысловые глаголы имеют самостоятельное значение и в предложении являются сказуемым:

*We **study** at the Technical Institute.* – Мы **учимся** в техническом институте.

2. Модальные глаголы **can, may, must** и другие служат для выражения возможности, вероятности, необходимости или желательности совершения действия и употребляются в сочетании с инфинитивом смыслового глагола [9].

3. Глаголы-связки служат для образования составного именного сказуемого. К ним относятся глаголы: **to be** (который в настоящем времени на русский язык не переводится), **to become, to get, to turn, to grow** в значении *становиться* и др.:



*My father is an engineer. – Мой отец – инженер.*  
*She will **become** a doctor. – Она **будет (станет)** врачом.*

4. Вспомогательные глаголы **to be, to have, to do, will (would)** служат для образования аналитических (сложных) глагольных форм. Они не имеют самостоятельного значения и поэтому на русский язык не переводятся:

*I **did** not like the article. – Мне не понравилась эта статья.*  
*He **has** been to England. – Он был в Англии.*

Глаголы в английском языке имеют категории **наклонения, залога и времени**.

1. *Наклонение*. В английском языке три наклонения:

а) Изъявительное наклонение выражает действие как реальный факт во всех временах:

*Our studies **begin** in September and end in July. – Наши занятия **начинаются** в сентябре и **заканчиваются** в июле.*

б) Повелительное наклонение выражает побуждение к действию, т.е. просьбу, совет, приказание, запрещение:

***Measure** the temperature of the water. – **Измерьте** температуру воды.*

с) Сослагательное наклонение выражает действие не как реальный факт, а как действие предполагаемое или желательное:

*If she **were** present at the conference, she **would take** part in the discussion. – Если **бы** она **присутствовала** на конференции, она **бы приняла** участие в дискуссии.*

2. *Залог*. В английском языке имеются два залога:

а) Активный залог показывает, что лицо (или предмет), являющееся подлежащим, само производит действие:

*They **equipped** the port with modern facilities. – Они **оборудовали** порт современными средствами.*

б) Пассивный залог показывает, что лицо (или предмет), являющееся подлежащим, подвергается действию со стороны другого лица (или предмета):

*The port **was equipped** with modern facilities. – Порт **был оборудован** современными средствами.*

3. *Время*. В английском языке имеется четыре группы глагольных времен: Indefinite, Continuous, Perfect и Perfect Continuous.

Английский глагол имеет три основные **формы** (табл. 13.1).

Таблица 13.1

## Список неправильных глаголов

Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Participle II	Перевод
<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>
to be	was, were	been	быть
to become	became	become	становиться
to begin	began	begun	начинать(ся)
to blow	blew	blown	дуть
to break	broke	broken	ломать, разбивать
to bring	brought	brought	приносить
to broadcast	broadcast; -ed	broadcast; -ed	передавать по радио
to build	built	built	строить
to buy	bought	bought	покупать
to choose	chose	chosen	выбирать
to come	came	come	приходить, приезжать
to cost	cost	cost	стоить
to cut	cut	cut	резать
to deal (with)	dealt (with)	dealt (with)	иметь дело с
to do	did	done	делать
to draw	drew	drawn	рисовать, чертить
to drink	drank	drunk	пить
to drive	drove	driven	везти, управлять
to eat	ate	eaten	есть (принимать пищу)
to fall	fell	fallen	падать
to feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
to find	found	found	находить
to fly	flew	flown	летать
to foresee	foresaw	foreseen	предвидеть
to forget	forgot	forgotten	забывать
to get	got	got	получать, становиться
to give	gave	given	давать
to go	went	gone	идти, ехать
to grow	grew	grown	расти, становиться
to hang	hung	hung	висеть, вешать
to have	had	had	иметь
to hear	heard	heard	слышать
to hold	held	held	держать, владеть
to keep	kept	kept	держать, хранить
to know	knew	known	знать
to lay	laid	laid	класть
to lead	led	led	вести

Продолжение табл. 13.1

1	2	3	4
to learn	learnt; ~-ed	learnt; ~-ed	учиться, узнавать
to leave	left	left	оставлять, уезжать
to let	let	let	позволять, пускать
to lose	lost	lost	терять
to make	made	made	делать
to mean	meant	meant	значить, предполагать
to meet	met	met	встречать
to pay	paid	paid	платить
to put	put	put	класть
to read	read	read	читать
to ring	rang	rung	звонить, звенеть
to rise	rose	risen	вставать
to run	ran	run	бежать
to say	said	said	говорить, сказать
to see	saw	seen	видеть
to sell	sold	sold	продавать
to send	sent	sent	посылать
to set	set	set	ставить, устанавливать
to show	showed	shown	показывать
to sit	sat	sat	сидеть
to speak	spoke	spoken	говорить
to spend	spent	spent	тратить, проводить
to spread	spread	spread	распространять(ся)
to stand	stood	stood	стоять
to swim	swam	swum	плавать
to take	took	taken	брать
to teach	taught	taught	учить, обучать
to tell	told	told	рассказывать
to think	thought	thought	думать
to understand	understood	understood	понимать
to wear	wore	worn	носить
to win	won	won	выигрывать
to write	wrote	written	писать

Эти формы служат для образования как простых, так и сложных (в сочетании с модальными и вспомогательными глаголами) глагольных форм.

## ТЕМА 14. АКТИВНЫЙ ЗАЛОГ (THE ACTIVE VOICE)

Активный залог показывает, что лицо (или предмет), являющееся подлежащим, само производит действие, выраженное различными временными формами.

### 14.1. Времена неопределенной группы (the Indefinite Tenses)

Времена группы Indefinite употребляются:

1. для передачи констатации факта совершения действия;
2. для выражения обычно совершаемого действия в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем времени.

В эту группу входят три времени: Present, Past и Future Indefinite.

#### 14.1.1. The Present Indefinite Tense [do (does), V1(s)]

Формы Present Indefinite совпадают с формами инфинитива глагола без частицы **to** для всех лиц, кроме формы 3-го лица единственного числа (he, she, it), которая принимает окончание **-s** или **-es**. На русский язык переводится настоящим временем:

*We **begin** our studies in September.* – Мы **начинаем** наши занятия в сентябре.

*He **works** at the port.* – Он **работает** в порту.

Present Indefinite употребляется со следующими наречиями или обстоятельствами времени: **usually** – *обычно*, **sometimes** – *иногда*, **seldom** – *редко*, **today** – *сегодня*, **often** – *часто*, **always** – *всегда* и т.д.

Отрицательная (Negative) и вопросительная (Interrogative) формы Present Indefinite образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to do** (для 3-го лица единственного числа **does**) и смыслового глагола в форме инфинитива без частицы **to**.

При образовании отрицательной формы сохраняется порядок слов утвердительного предложения. Отрицание **not** ставится между вспомогательным и смысловым глаголом.

При образовании вопросительной формы вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим, а смысловой глагол следует за подлежащим [9].

Вопрос, начинающийся со вспомогательного глагола (общий вопрос), как правило, требует краткого ответа. Краткий ответ состоит из слов **Yes** или **No**, за которыми следует подлежащее, выраженное соответствующим личным местоимением, и вспомогательный глагол:

*The job **gives** her satisfaction.* – Работа **приносит** ей удовлетворение.

*The job **does not give** her satisfaction.* – Работа **не приносит** ей удовлетворения.

***Does** the job **give** her satisfaction?* – **Приносит** ли ей работа удовлетворение?

*Yes, it **does**.* (*No, it **does not**.*) – **Да.** (**Нет.**)

Показателем времени, лица и числа в вопросительной и отрицательной формах является вспомогательный глагол **do (does)**.

В ряде случаев глагол в Present Indefinite в утвердительной форме нельзя отличить от существительного, например:

*the **lectures*** – лекции;

*he **lectures*** – он читает лекции;

*the **load*** – загрузка;

*they **load*** – они загружают.

Поэтому необходимо знать следующие признаки, по которым можно опознать сказуемое:

1. Личное местоимение в именительном падеже (I, you, he, she, it, we, they) показывает, что следующее за ним слово – сказуемое:

***It** (the bus) **stops** at our house.* – **Он** (автобус) **останавливается** у нашего дома.

2. Личное местоимение в объектном падеже (me, you, him, her, it, us, them) показывает, что предшествующее ему слово – глагол-сказуемое:

*This vessel **interests us** greatly.* – Это судно очень **интересует нас**.

3. Существительное (или существительное с определением), стоящее в середине предложения без предлога (прямое дополнение), показывает, что предшествующее ему слово – глагол-сказуемое:

*We **change the data** in our table.* – Мы **меняем данные** в нашей таблице.

4. Наличие глаголов-связок, вспомогательных или модальных глаголов после подлежащего: **to be**, **to have**, **to do**, **shall (should)**, **will (would)**, **can (could)**, **may (might)**, **must**:

*My friend **is a student**.* – Мой друг – **студент**.

*The stevedore **must examine** the ship himself.* – Стивидор **должен проверить** судно сам.

### Тренировочные упражнения

*Ex. 1. Put the verbs in brackets in the 3<sup>d</sup> person singular in the Present Indefinite Tense.*

1. He (to work) \_\_\_\_\_ hard at his English.

2. She (to speak) \_\_\_\_\_ many foreign languages.

3. It (*to take*) \_\_\_\_\_ me much time to cook dinner.
4. My friend (*to receive*) \_\_\_\_\_ many letters from England.
5. His father (*to write*) \_\_\_\_\_ articles on cargo transportation and  
(*to send*) \_\_\_\_\_ them to many journals.
6. The lecture (*to begin*) \_\_\_\_\_ at 9 sharp.
7. The new equipment (*to cost*) \_\_\_\_\_ 5 million roubles.
8. The book (*to give*) \_\_\_\_\_ a good idea of this problem.
9. He (*to teach*) \_\_\_\_\_ German at the University.
10. The airplane (*to cross*) \_\_\_\_\_ the Pacific Ocean for about 2 hours.

**Ex. 2. Put the following sentences in the interrogative and the negative forms.**

1. He speaks French. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. She plays the piano. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. They often come here. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. We work in the library every day. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. I read newspapers in the morning. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. His parents always give him foreign magazines to read. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. You write new words before the lesson. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. His sister lives in Siberia. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. My friend goes to the theatre every week. – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Her son learns two foreign languages. – \_\_\_\_\_
11. He usually does English exercises at home. – \_\_\_\_\_
12. The article describes the new scientific discovery. – \_\_\_\_\_
13. The articles describe the newly discovered phenomena. – \_\_\_\_\_
14. I often meet this engineer here. – \_\_\_\_\_
15. He meets foreign delegations every month. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Answer the questions using the Present Indefinite. Use the adverbs in brackets.**

1. What time do you go to the Institute? (generally, usually)
2. What do you do on Sunday mornings? (often)
3. How do you spend your leisure time? (usually, occasionally)
4. What sort of radio programmes do you listen to? (usually, often, always)

5. How do you help your parents? (always, sometimes, usually)
6. What sort of films do you enjoy? (nearly always)
7. Where do you read for your examinations? (normally, sometimes)
8. Where do you have your meals? (usually, sometimes)
9. What do you take if you have a headache? (generally, usually)
10. How do you celebrate your birthday? (nearly always, occasionally)

**Ex. 4. Make up questions. Begin the questions using the given word(s).**

**Models:** – Bob plays chess. – *How often* does Bob play chess?  
 – I get up early. – *What time* do you *usually* get up?

1. Felix watches birds. – How often \_\_\_\_\_?
2. I write to my parents. – How often \_\_\_\_\_?
3. I have dinner in the evening. – What time \_\_\_\_\_ usually \_\_\_\_\_?
4. She works. – Where \_\_\_\_\_?
5. I go to the Zoo. – How often \_\_\_\_\_?
6. People do stupid things. – Why \_\_\_\_\_?
7. The motor breaks down. – How often \_\_\_\_\_?

#### **14.1.2. The Past Indefinite Tense [did, V2(ed)]**

По образованию Past Indefinite все глаголы делятся на две группы:

1. Правильные глаголы (Regular Verbs), которые образуют Past Indefinite для всех лиц единственного и множественного числа прибавлением к основе глагола окончания **-ed**:

*to work – I worked, to play – he played.*

2. Неправильные глаголы (Irregular Verbs), которые образуют Past Indefinite путем изменения корневой гласной, прибавлением окончания или другими способами, т.е. является второй формой глагола (см. табл. 13.1).

Глагол в Past Indefinite Tense на русский язык переводится глаголом в прошедшем времени как несовершенного, так и совершенного вида в зависимости от контекста:

*He delivered cargoes. – Он доставил (доставлял) грузы.*

Past Indefinite употребляется, как правило, с обстоятельством времени: **yesterday** – *вчера*, **last month** (year, week) – *в прошлом месяце* (году, на прошлой неделе), а также с датами, относящимися к прошлому: **in 1960** и т.д.

Отрицательная и вопросительная формы Past Indefinite как правильных, так и неправильных глаголов образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to do** в форме **did** для всех лиц единственного и множественного числа и инфинитива смыслового глагола без частицы **to**.

При образовании отрицательной формы сохраняется порядок слов утвердительного предложения; отрицание **not** ставится между вспомогательным и смысловым глаголом.

При образовании вопросительной формы вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим, а смысловой – после подлежащего [9]:

*The ship **left** the port. – Корабль **покинул** порт.*

*The ship **did not leave** the port. – Корабль **не покинул** порт.*

***Did** the ship **leave** the port? – **Покинул** корабль порт?*

*Yes, it **did**. (No, it **didn't**.) – Да. (Нет.)*

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 5. Put the following sentences in the Past Tense.**

**a) with regular verbs**

1. He plays tennis very well. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. She helps me in my work. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. They repeat new grammar rules before the lesson. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

4. I prepare my home-task in the evening. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

5. I watch TV every day. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. He asks many questions. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. I never listen to the radio. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. Our students always answer well at the lessons. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

9. I translate texts from Russian into English. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

10. My father returns home very late. – \_\_\_\_\_

**b) with irregular verbs**

1. The film begins at 6 p.m. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. He always comes in time. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. We go to the University by bus. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. They do everything properly. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. My friend gives me interesting books to read. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

6. I know English well. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. I see it with my own eyes. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. She takes books from the library. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

9. My son tells me everything. – \_\_\_\_\_



10. We write test-papers at the end of the term. – \_\_\_\_\_

11. He finds all the necessary data in reference books. – \_\_\_\_\_

12. Our manager leaves abroad. – \_\_\_\_\_

13. Our family spends summer holidays in the country. – \_\_\_\_\_

14. Our teacher speaks three foreign languages. – \_\_\_\_\_

15. I think about your suggestion. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Put the following sentences in the interrogative and the negative forms.**

1. She translated many exercises yesterday. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. Last year he lived in Moscow. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. They returned home late. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. We discussed a lot of problems at the meeting. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. The scientist finished his experiment two days ago. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. My working day lasted eight hours. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. The students repeated the new grammar rules. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. He knew English when he was a child. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. She spoke to us about her plans. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. He went home after classes. – \_\_\_\_\_

11. My parents wrote to me very often last year. – \_\_\_\_\_

12. I got this letter yesterday morning. – \_\_\_\_\_

13. The commission took all the facts into account. – \_\_\_\_\_

14. The lesson began at 9 o'clock. – \_\_\_\_\_

15. She told the news to everyone. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Make up questions. A friend has just come back from Italy and you are asking him.**

**Models:** – What place / go? – What place did you go to?  
– The weather / fine? – Was the weather fine?

1. how long / stay there? – \_\_\_\_\_

2. stay in a hotel? – \_\_\_\_\_
3. go alone? – \_\_\_\_\_
4. how / travel? – \_\_\_\_\_
5. the food / good? – \_\_\_\_\_
6. what / do in the evenings? – \_\_\_\_\_
7. make any friends there? – \_\_\_\_\_

### 14.1.3. The Future Indefinite Tense [will + V1]

Future Indefinite образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **will** и инфинитива смыслового глагола без частицы **to**.

На русский язык переводится глаголом в будущем времени как несовершенного, так и совершенного вида в зависимости от контекста:

*He **will make** a report next week.* – Он **сделает (будет делать)** доклад на следующей неделе.

Future Indefinite употребляется, как правило, с обстоятельствами времени: **tomorrow** – *завтра*, **next month** (year, week) – *в следующем месяце (году, на следующей неделе)*, **in ... days** (years) – *через ... дней (лет)*, а также с датами, относящимися к будущему: **in 2020** и т.д.

При образовании отрицательной формы сохраняется порядок слов утвердительного предложения, отрицание **not** ставится между вспомогательным и смысловым глаголом.

При образовании вопросительной формы вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим, а смысловой – после подлежащего:

*We **will change** our plans for Sunday.* – Мы **изменим** свои планы на воскресенье.

*We **will not change** our plans for Sunday.* – Мы **не будем менять** свои планы на воскресенье.

***Will you change** your plans for Sunday?* – Вы **измените** свои планы на воскресенье?

*Yes, we **will**. (No, we **won't**.)* – Да. (Нет.)

Future Indefinite заменяется временем Present Indefinite в придаточных предложениях времени и условия, которые вводятся союзами: **if** – *если*, **when** – *когда*, **as soon as** – *как только*, **provided** – *при условии*, **before** – *перед*, **in case** – *в случае*, **after** – *после*, **till (until)** – *до тех пор пока*:

***If he asks me**, I will readily help him.* – Если он **попросит** меня, я охотно помогу ему.

*We will discuss her paper **as soon as** we **get** it.* – Мы обсудим ее работу, как только получим ее.

**Примечание.** Есть несколько способов передачи **будущности** в английском языке:

1. С помощью времени the Present Indefinite, когда речь идет о расписании, графике и т.п.:

*The train **leaves** at 5 o'clock p.m. every day.* – Поезд **отправляется** в 5 часов вечера каждый день.

2. С помощью времени the Present Continuous, если речь идет о запланированном событии. Часто употребляется выражение **going to (do)** *собираться делать что-либо*:

*They **are visiting** us on week-end.* – Они **придут** к нам в выходной день.

*I **am going to** read all day long.* – Я **собираюсь** читать весь день.

3. С помощью выражений **be to, be about to, be due to** в официальной речи или исходя из договоренности и расписания:

*Summit **is to** take place in Brussels.* – Саммит **будет проходить** в Брюсселе.

*Hurry up! The ship **is about to** depart.* – Поторопись! Корабль **отправляется**.

*The plane **is due to** land at 2.15.* – Самолет **совершит посадку** в 2.15.

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 8. Put the following sentences in the Future Tense.**

1. He plays tennis very well. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. She helps me in my work. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. They repeat new grammar rules before the lesson. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. I prepare my home-task in the evening. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. I watch TV every day. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. He asks many questions. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. I never listen to the radio. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. Our students always answer well at the lessons. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. I translate texts from Russian into English. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. My father returns home very late. – \_\_\_\_\_

11. The film begins at 6 p.m. – \_\_\_\_\_

12. He always comes in time. – \_\_\_\_\_

13. We go to the University by bus. – \_\_\_\_\_

14. They do everything properly. – \_\_\_\_\_

15. My friend gives me interesting books to read. – \_\_\_\_\_

16. I know English well. – \_\_\_\_\_

17. I see it with my own eyes. – \_\_\_\_\_

18. She takes books from the library. – \_\_\_\_\_

19. My son tells me everything. – \_\_\_\_\_

20. We write test-papers at the end of the term. – \_\_\_\_\_

21. He finds all the necessary data in reference books. – \_\_\_\_\_

22. Our manager leaves abroad. – \_\_\_\_\_

23. Our family spends summer holidays in the country. – \_\_\_\_\_

24. Our teacher speaks three foreign languages. – \_\_\_\_\_

25. I think about your suggestion. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 9. Put the following sentences in the interrogative and the negative forms.**

1. I'll do it tomorrow morning. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. He will go there by bus. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. It will take me two hours to get there. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. We will graduate in 5 years. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. My sister will stay with us for several days. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. She will forget about it. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. They will remember us. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. Our students will go to the UK next summer. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. The plant will produce new machinery. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. Our University will train specialists in shipbuilding. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 10. Make one sentence from two sentences beginning with the conjunctions.**

**Model:** – They are off soon. You must visit them before that. – You must visit them before they are off.

1. I'm going to finish my work. Then I'll go to the cinema. – When \_\_\_\_\_

2. He'll spend a week in Brussels. Then he'll go to England. – Before \_\_\_\_\_

3. He'll come to London in April. He can stay with us. – When \_\_\_\_\_

4. It's going to be dark soon. Let's leave before that. – When \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 11. Say when you are going to do something. Use the suggested adverbs.**

**Model:** to write to your parents (tomorrow) – I am going to write to my parents tomorrow.

1. to speak to the manager – \_\_\_\_\_ after lunch.

2. to take examination period – \_\_\_\_\_ in winter.

3. to build a ship – \_\_\_\_\_ next year.

4. to ring your sick friend – \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.

5. to become a manager – \_\_\_\_\_ after graduating from the University.

6. to write the Christmas cards – \_\_\_\_\_ on the eve of the holiday.

7. to buy train tickets for Vladivostok – \_\_\_\_\_ in a week.

8. to get married – \_\_\_\_\_ soon.

9. to play with children – \_\_\_\_\_ just now.

### Обзорные упражнения

**Ex. 12. Translate the sentences paying attention to the tenses.**

1. Our library supplies the students with all necessary books.

2. He worked hard and finished the work before the appointed time.

3. I am sure he will follow my advice.

4. We got a letter from him and everything became clear.

5. He will join the Students Scientific Society next term.

6. He did everything in his power to help us.

7. The train arrives in an hour and leaves tomorrow morning.

8. Water turns into ice when the temperature drops below zero.

9. I think you gave up the idea of learning French.

10. Practical work follows theoretical study.

11. Most English Universities combine faculties of engineering with science faculties.

12. The close contacts of higher schools with research Institutes help the students to learn modern research methods.

13. Our scientists and engineers work out new systems and new models of robots.

14. This professor graduated from Moscow University and obtained his doctor's degree two years ago.

15. Last year he published many works and took part in numerous conferences and symposia.

16. Next month he will make a report on cargo transportation.

17. The work will be difficult; it will probably take us a few years to complete.

18. We wrote an article on the results of the experiment.

19. Next week we will make all the necessary measurements and obtain additional data.

20. The experiments will help us to get reliable information.

***Ex. 12. Translate the sentences into Russian.***

1. Fear always springs from ignorance.

2. Tomorrow always comes.

3. All available data correlate well.

4. Some output resulted which obscured the situation.

5. This resulted in further reduction of echo magnitude.

6. Iron content in steel accounts for 99.9 per cent.

7. This sequence of strategies will do for our purpose.

8. This hypothesis lacked confirmation.

9. The problem goes beyond the subject matter of the work.

10. This means that the method of geometric means leads to more satisfactory results than that of arithmetic means.

11. Three times four equals twelve.

12. In this paper we will base the classification on two distinct criteria.

13. The line between emotion and reason seems rather sharp.

14. It took mathematicians a long time to realize that not all continuous functions have a derivate.

15. This suggests that such a process results in average spectrum.

16. The lattice distortions may result from mechanical polishing.

17. Several factors affected the quality of the broadcast signal.

18. We achieved the value by selecting F rather than G.

19. We shall concentrate, however, on the process which generates this knowledge rather than on the knowledge itself.

20. What are you going to do next if you solve this problem?

## 14.2. Времена продленной группы (the Continuous Tenses) [to be + Ving]

Continuous Tenses выражают длительные, незаконченные действия в процессе их совершения и переводятся на русский язык глаголами только несовершенного вида.

Continuous Tenses образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to be** в соответствующем времени, лице и числе и смыслового глагола с окончанием **-ing** (эту форму глагола еще называют Participle I – причастием настоящего времени).

Во временах группы Continuous время, лицо и число глагола-сказуемого определяется по вспомогательному глаголу **to be**. Смысловый глагол в форме Participle I не изменяется:

*Students **are making** an experiment in the hydrodynamic research pool.* – Студенты **проводят** эксперимент в гидродинамическом опытном бассейне.

*The scientist **was making** a very interesting experiment when we entered the pool.* – Ученый **проводил** очень интересный эксперимент, когда мы вошли в бассейн.

С временами группы Continuous употребляются следующие наречия и обстоятельства времени: **now** – *сейчас*, **at present moment** – *в настоящий момент*, **from 5 to (till) 7 o'clock** – *с 5 до 7 часов*, **from morning till night** – *с утра до вечера*, **when he came** – *когда он пришел*, **while** – *в то время*, **during (for)** – *в течение* и др.

Группа глаголов, относящихся к категориям ментального и чувственного восприятия, не употребляется с временами группы Continuous: **to see** – *видеть*, **to hear** – *слышать*, **to know** – *знать*, **to think** – *думать*, **to feel** – *чувствовать*, **to wish** – *желать*, **to want** – *хотеть*, **to hate** – *ненавидеть*, **to understand** – *понимать*, **to consider** – *считать* и др.

При образовании отрицательной формы времен группы Continuous сохраняется порядок слов утвердительного предложения, отрицание **not** ставится между вспомогательным и смысловым глаголом:

*The gang **is not loading** the container with boxes.* – Бригада **не загружает** контейнер ящиками.

При образовании вопросительной формы вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим, а смысловый глагол – после подлежащего:

***Will** we **be preparing** for a very important experiment at 8 o'clock tomorrow?* – Завтра в 8 часов мы **будем готовиться** к очень важному эксперименту?

*Yes, **will be**.* – Да. *No, **won't be**.* – Нет.

### 14.2.1. The Present Continuous Tense [am, are, is + Ving]

Present Continuous переводится глаголом несовершенного вида в настоящем времени:

*The gang **is loading** the container with boxes. – Бригада **загружает** контейнер ящиками.*

Глагол **to be** можно использовать в Present Continuous в выражениях **to be being + прилагательное и/или существительное**:

*You **are being bad** today, young man. Behave yourself. – Ты **сегодня ведёшь себя плохо**, молодой человек. **Веди себя хорошо**.*

### 14.2.2. The Past Continuous Tense [was, were + Ving]

Past Continuous переводится глаголом несовершенного вида в прошедшем времени:

*They **were analyzing** the results of their research from 4 to 6 o'clock yesterday. – Они **анализировали** результаты своей исследовательской работы с 4 до 6 часов вчера.*

*One student **was carrying out** the experiment while the other **was putting down** all the details. – Один студент **проводил** эксперимент, а другой **подробно все записывал**.*

### 14.2.3. The Future Continuous Tense [will be + Ving]

Future Continuous переводится глаголом несовершенного вида в будущем времени:

*At 8 o'clock tomorrow **we'll be preparing** for a very important experiment. – Завтра в 8 часов мы **будем готовиться** к очень важному эксперименту.*

### Тренировочные упражнения

**Ex. 13. Translate the sentences paying attention to the tense forms of the predicates.**

1. She usually translates new texts very quickly.  
She is translating a new text now.
2. She translated the new text yesterday.  
She was translating the new text all the evening yesterday.
3. She will translate the new text tomorrow.  
She will be translating the new text from 5 to 7 o'clock tomorrow.
4. We write dictations every day.  
We are writing a dictation now.



5. We wrote a dictation at the previous lesson.  
We were writing a dictation for half an hour.
6. We will write a dictation next time.  
We will be writing a dictation when you come.
7. They often make experiments in the laboratory.  
They are making an experiment.
8. They made a number of experiments last week.  
They were making experiments for a long time.
9. They will make an experiment in a week.  
Tomorrow at 5 o'clock they will be making an experiment.

***Ex. 14. Change the Indefinite tenses to the Continuous ones adding necessary adverbs or time attributives.***

1. I prepare for examinations in the library. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. He reads scientific journals. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. My sister works at her thesis. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. The students study new words at the lesson. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. They have dinner at home. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. The engine rotated with high speed. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. They built a new metro line. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. The car went in the opposite direction. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. We discussed a very important problem. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The scientist spoke about the discovery. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. They will listen to the lecture tomorrow. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Tomorrow we shall have a laboratory work. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. The engineer will test the new equipment on Monday. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. They will show a new TV program next week. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. The plant will install the new safety system. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 15. Put the following sentences into the Past Continuous and Future Continuous Tenses adding necessary adverbs or time attributives.**

1. They are looking at the blackboard. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. I am listening to the concert from the Philharmonic Society. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. He is looking through a magazine. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. The train is approaching the station. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. We are speaking over the telephone for 10 minutes. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. The English students are writing their examination paper. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. The professor is delivering a lecture. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. I am working in the laboratory. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. The doctors are examining their patients. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. The director is making arrangements over the telephone. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 16. Put the sentences into the interrogative and negative forms.**

1. They are still discussing the first report. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. The secretary is looking through the morning mail. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. I am carrying out an experiment. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. We are leaving the town tonight. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. You are having a rest now. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. The secretary was typing the report all the morning. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. People were hurrying to the station. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. We were packing our things when he came. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. He was waiting for us at 5 o'clock. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. I was having visitors at this time yesterday. – \_\_\_\_\_

11. We will be playing chess for half an hour. – \_\_\_\_\_

12. They will be still discussing our proposal when we come. – \_\_\_\_\_

13. I will be writing a report at 5 o'clock tomorrow. – \_\_\_\_\_

14. The laboratory assistant will be taking readings of the apparatus from 5 to 7 p.m. – \_\_\_\_\_
15. Tomorrow at this time you will be sailing across the English Channel. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 

**Ex. 17. Put the verbs in brackets in the appropriate Continuous tenses.**

1. Now they (*to organize*) \_\_\_\_\_ another kind of experiments in the laboratory.
2. – Where is Peter? – He (*to play*) \_\_\_\_\_ volley-ball.
3. Listen! The telephone (*to ring*) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The man who (*to smoke*) \_\_\_\_\_ a pipe at the window now is my brother.
5. Don't ring him up now! I think he still (*to work*) \_\_\_\_\_ in the laboratory.
6. I (*to read*) \_\_\_\_\_ all the evening yesterday.
7. When I came the secretary (*to type*) \_\_\_\_\_ the letters.
8. Large crowds of people (*to wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ at the station when the delegation arrived.
9. It (*to rain*) \_\_\_\_\_ from nine to eleven last night.
10. The train couldn't stop at once because it (*to travel*) \_\_\_\_\_ too fast.
11. I (*to wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ for him at 7 o'clock tomorrow.
12. At this time tomorrow I (*to have*) \_\_\_\_\_ an English lesson.
13. He (*to work*) \_\_\_\_\_ all day tomorrow.
14. The day after tomorrow we (*to install*) \_\_\_\_\_ the new equipment from 6 to 8 p.m.
15. When you come back they still (*to discuss*) \_\_\_\_\_ our proposal.

**Ex. 18. Translate the sentences paying attention to the predicates.**

1. He is planning to begin a new set of experiments on crystals.
2. We are analyzing the experimental data.
3. The laboratory staff is gathering for a meeting.
4. I am taking a post-graduate course in shipbuilding.
5. Our scientists are making a great contribution to the development of world science and technology.
6. The students were checking and adjusting the devices all day yesterday.
7. We were making measurements and recording the data for 2 hours.
8. He was making computations in the laboratory when the telephone rang.
9. My scientific adviser was working on a new theory when the conference began.
10. I was writing the article for a long time.
11. The department will be conducting tests on new materials for two weeks.

12. During the whole next year those specialists will be studying new substances.

13. At 5 o'clock tomorrow I will be testing this device.

14. When you come we will be making preparations for the departure.

15. The students will be making measurements and recording the data from 5 to 7 p.m.

**Ex. 19. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Indefinite and the Present Continuous.**

1. Mr. Smith (*to teach*) \_\_\_\_\_ us at present. He (*to substitute*) \_\_\_\_\_ for Mr. Reese, who (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ our regular teacher.

2. – I (*to go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to visit Peter tonight. He (*to leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning. – He (*to come*) \_\_\_\_\_ back the same day? – I (*not / to know*) \_\_\_\_\_.

3. John often (*to stay*) \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel when he (*to come*) \_\_\_\_\_ to town, but tonight he (*to stay*) \_\_\_\_\_ with us.

4. The fourth class always (*to meet*) \_\_\_\_\_ on the 18<sup>th</sup> floor, but our class (*to meet*) \_\_\_\_\_ on the 17<sup>th</sup> floor. However, since they (*to paint*) \_\_\_\_\_ our regular classroom now, we (*to go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to meet in the club-room today.

5. – Nick (*to leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ today. – What train he (*to take*) \_\_\_\_\_ for his journey? – He (*to catch*) \_\_\_\_\_ the 5.50 train.

6. The mechanic (*to repair*) \_\_\_\_\_ my car today. So I must go to work by the underground.

7. – You (*to write*) \_\_\_\_\_ him tonight? – Yes, I always (*to write*) \_\_\_\_\_ him on his birthday. You (*to want*) \_\_\_\_\_ send any message? – Certainly.

8. John (*to say*) \_\_\_\_\_ he (*to leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ for Chicago on the fifteenth.

9. I (*to go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the seaside on my holiday.

10. My brother (*to come*) \_\_\_\_\_ to see me next week.

11. Whenever I (*to call*) \_\_\_\_\_ at the Smiths' home, they (*to play*) \_\_\_\_\_ cards. I really (*to think*) \_\_\_\_\_ they (*to play*) \_\_\_\_\_ every night.

12. Jack (*to make*) \_\_\_\_\_ at least ten spelling errors in every lesson.

**Ex. 20. Open the brackets. Use the Past Indefinite in case of permanent, repeated one-time actions. Use the Past Continuous if the action is a temporary one taking place at a given moment in the past.**

1. I (*to open*) \_\_\_\_\_ the shutters and (*to look*) \_\_\_\_\_ out. The car (*to stand*) \_\_\_\_\_ where I had left it.

2. Suddenly I (*to realize*) \_\_\_\_\_ that they (*not / to pay attention*) \_\_\_\_\_ to me any longer. They (*to mutter*) \_\_\_\_\_ something and

all (to look) \_\_\_\_\_ in the same direction. I (to turn) \_\_\_\_\_ my head and (to look) \_\_\_\_\_ where they all (to look) \_\_\_\_\_. A man (to come) \_\_\_\_\_ slowly down a steep little street that (to lead) \_\_\_\_\_ uphill between the houses on my right.

3. On my left I (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ the lights of the first house of the village, and I (to hurry) \_\_\_\_\_ towards it through the wood when a sudden flash of light (to make) \_\_\_\_\_ me stop.

4. At that time I (to look) \_\_\_\_\_ for a job.

5. Miss Nobbs (not / to see) \_\_\_\_\_ him leave the office. At half past four she (to make) \_\_\_\_\_ herself a cup of tea in a small recess off the main corridor.

6. The idea first (to occur) \_\_\_\_\_ to me that afternoon as I (to back) \_\_\_\_\_ the car into the garage.

7. I probably (to drop) \_\_\_\_\_ the key when I (to fish) \_\_\_\_\_ for small change in my bag at the news-stand.

8. All through the night I (to hear) \_\_\_\_\_ them work, open drawers, drag cases over the floor. They (to pack) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 21. Extend the statements in the Future Continuous Tense, using the words in brackets.**

**Model:** Don't call for me at six. (have a bath) – Don't call for me at six; I will be having a bath.

1. Don't ring them up at seven in the morning. (sleep) – \_\_\_\_\_

2. Don't send us any letters in June. (travel) – \_\_\_\_\_

3. Don't call on us tonight. (pack) – \_\_\_\_\_

4. Don't come to see her after lunch. (type) – \_\_\_\_\_

5. Don't leave the child alone. (cry) – \_\_\_\_\_

6. Don't tell Granny about it. (grumble) – \_\_\_\_\_

7. Don't expect him to come next Saturday. (work) – \_\_\_\_\_

8. Don't wait for Maggie tomorrow. (keep to her room) – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 22. Put the verb in brackets into the Present Indefinite, the Future Indefinite and the Future Continuous Tenses.**

1. When I (to get) \_\_\_\_\_ home, my animals (to sit) \_\_\_\_\_ at the door waiting for me.

2. It (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ the middle of June. They (to come) \_\_\_\_\_ soon.

3. If you (to want) \_\_\_\_\_ to see us, come to Tom's on Sunday. We (to wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for you there at midday.

4. At this time next week they (to board) \_\_\_\_\_ the plane to London.

5. They (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ English from nine to ten in this room.

6. I (to wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for you when you (to come) \_\_\_\_\_.

7. – I (to call) \_\_\_\_\_ for her at eight. – No, don't; she still (to sleep) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. They are so angry. A few more words and they (to quarrel) \_\_\_\_\_ again.

**Ex. 23. Read the story. Insert 'while', 'during', or 'for'.**

### **A Disastrous Sailing Holiday**

Bill and Simone Butler left Miami one summer weekend on their annual sailing holiday in their boat *Siboney*. They wanted to sail round the Caribbean Sea \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks.

\_\_\_\_\_ their holiday, they saw a large group of whales (киты). Bill and Simone were very excited. Unfortunately, \_\_\_\_\_ they were watching them, the whales began to hit the side of the boat.

Suddenly, water started flooding in (захлестывать), and they realized that they were in trouble. They quickly jumped into the lifeboat \_\_\_\_\_ the boat was sinking, and watched it disappear under the sea.

Fortunately, they had enough food and water \_\_\_\_\_ twenty days. They also had a fishing line and a machine which made salt water into drinking water. These two things helped them to survive \_\_\_\_\_ their terrible experience.

\_\_\_\_\_ the next 50 days they caught about ten fish a day and ate them raw. They saw about twenty ships, but although they waved and shouted \_\_\_\_\_ they were passing, nobody saw them. They were becoming weaker and weaker. Then, just as they were beginning to lose hope, a fishing boat rescued them. Their disastrous holiday was over.

### **Обзорные упражнения**

**Ex. 24. Translate into Russian.**

1. The reaction was running smoothly.
2. Definite proof of that effect is presently lacking.
3. At that time the spherical joint was becoming more and more useful in the construction of glass equipment.
4. They will be making the experiment the whole day long.
5. In addition, rapid changes were, and still are, taking place in the relative economics of computing and communications.
6. The discussion of the problems was going on from 2 till 3 o'clock.
7. While delivering his lecture he will be demonstrating the map.
8. It should be stated that we are assuming throughout this chapter that the primary condition is already satisfied.
9. To understand how this is taking place it is not sufficient to know what science is doing now.

10. The men who gathered under the Pretender's banners were fighting not for, but against 'Something'.

11. You are being silly!

12. You are being ridiculous!

13. You are being a complete idiot!

14. I wonder why Hunter is being so nice to me today. Usually he doesn't even say "Hi".

15. – Your English is very good. – Thank you, but I think you are just being nice to me. – No, I really mean it.

16. I know that I'm being a selfish pig, but I'm not going to change my decision.

17. I am just being polite.

18. I'm just trying to be polite.

19. I'm just trying to be unbiased.

### 14.3. Времена совершенной группы (the Perfect Tenses) [to have + V3(ed)]

Perfect Tenses выражают действия, законченные к определенному моменту в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем.

Perfect Tenses образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to have** в соответствующем времени, лице и числе и 3-й формы (или Participle II – причастия пассивного залога) смыслового глагола.

Во временах группы Perfect время, лицо и число глагола-сказуемого определяется по вспомогательному глаголу **to have**. Смысловый глагол не изменяется:

*A group of Moscow researchers **has developed** new equipment for cargo handling.* – Группа московских исследователей **разработала** новое оборудование для обработки груза.

*The scientists **had completed** their research by the beginning of the year.* – Ученые **завершили** свои исследования к началу года.

При образовании отрицательной формы времен группы Perfect сохраняется порядок слов утвердительного предложения, отрицание **not** ставится между вспомогательным и смысловым глаголом:

*We **had not finished** handling cargo by 5 o'clock.* – Мы **не закончили** обрабатывать груз к пяти часам.

При образовании вопросительной формы вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим, а смысловый глагол – после подлежащего:

***Had** we **finished** handling cargo by 5 o'clock?* – Мы **не закончили** обрабатывать груз к пяти часам?

*Yes, we **had**.* – Да. *No, we **hadn't**.* – Нет.

### 14.3.1. The Present Perfect Tense [have / has + V3(ed)]

Present Perfect употребляется:

1. Когда время совершения действия не указано, но действие явно закончено к настоящему моменту и связано с этим моментом:

*We **have finished** handling cargo.* – Мы **закончили** обрабатывать груз.

2. Со словами, выражающими период времени, не закончившийся к настоящему моменту: **this week** – на этой неделе, **this month** – в этом месяце, **this year** – в этом году, **today** – сегодня и т.д.:

*I **haven't seen** him today.* – Я **не видел** его сегодня (день еще не закончился).

3. С наречиями неопределенного времени, которые обычно стоят между вспомогательным и смысловым глаголом: **often** – часто, **seldom** – редко, **always** – всегда, **never** – никогда, **ever** – когда-нибудь, **just** – только что, **not yet** – еще не, **sometimes** – иногда:

*We **have just finished** handling cargo.* – Мы только что **закончили** обрабатывать груз.

4) С предлогом **since** – с (с какого-то момента в прошлом до настоящего времени) и с союзом **since** – с тех пор, как, а также с предлогом **for** – в течение:

*I **have not seen** him for two years.* – Я **не видел** его в течение двух лет.

*I **have not seen** him since he finished handling cargo.* – Я **не видел** его с тех пор, как он закончил обрабатывать груз.

Present Perfect переводится на русский язык прошедшим временем глагола совершенного вида, реже – несовершенного вида, в зависимости от контекста:

*The astronomers **have determined** the distance between the Sun and the Earth.* – Астрономы **определили** расстояние между Солнцем и Землей.

### 14.3.2. The Past Perfect Tense [had + V3(ed)]

Past Perfect переводится прошедшим временем. Чтобы подчеркнуть законченность действия к определенному моменту в прошлом, употребляется предлог **by** – к:

*We **had finished** handling cargo by 5 o'clock.* – Мы **закончили** обрабатывать груз к пяти часам.

*We **had finished** our experiment before he came.* – Мы уже **закончили** эксперимент, когда он пришел.



### 14.3.3. The Future Perfect Tense [will have + V3(ed)]

Future Perfect переводится на русский язык глаголами совершенного вида в будущем времени обычно с наречием *уже*, чтобы подчеркнуть, что действие закончится до определенного момента в будущем:

*They will have completed handling cargo by the end of the week.* – Они закончат обрабатывать груз уже к концу недели.

*They will have completed handling cargo before you return.* – Они закончат обрабатывать груз, прежде чем вы вернетесь.

#### Тренировочные упражнения

*Ex. 25. Translate and compare the sentences paying attention to the use of tenses.*

1. I read this book last year.  
I have just read this book.
2. I was in London many years ago.  
I have been to London many times.
3. He wrote the composition yesterday.  
He has already written the composition.
4. I saw him last month.  
I have never seen him.
5. I met her the day before yesterday.  
I haven't met her since childhood.
6. They were discussing the new article when I entered the room.  
They had already discussed the new article when I entered the room.
7. We were testing the equipment when the commission arrived.  
We had already tested the equipment when the commission arrived.
8. They completed the experiment two days ago.  
They had completed the experiment by the end of last month.
9. We checked the device yesterday.  
We had checked the device by yesterday.
10. He made measurements yesterday and was making them for 2 hours.  
He had made measurements before we started the experiment.
11. We will finish the work tomorrow.  
We will have finished the work by 7 o'clock tomorrow.
12. We will equip the laboratory with modern devices.  
We will have equipped the laboratory by September.
13. Tomorrow evening I will be making a report on environmental protection.  
I will have made the report before the lecture starts.
14. The delegation will be conducting talks for a whole week.  
The delegation will have conducted talks by the end of next week.

15. The secretary will look through all the documents.

The secretary will have looked through all the documents by the time the director comes.

**Ex. 26. Put the sentences into the Present Perfect using the appropriate adverbial modifier of time.**

**Model A:** I am making the experiment. (already) – I have already made the experiment.

1. He is writing a letter. (already) – \_\_\_\_\_
2. She spoke to the teacher. (just) – \_\_\_\_\_
3. I saw her. (just) – \_\_\_\_\_
4. They will go home. (already) – \_\_\_\_\_
5. He was translating the text. (just) – \_\_\_\_\_

**Model B:** I was in London 2 years ago. (never) – I have never been to London.

1. He was in Africa last year. (never) – \_\_\_\_\_
2. I met him yesterday. (never) – \_\_\_\_\_
3. They saw northern lights. (never) – \_\_\_\_\_
4. We were in the British Museum. (never) – \_\_\_\_\_

---

5. The plant produces ships. (never) – \_\_\_\_\_

**Model C:** I knew him in childhood. (since) – I have known him since childhood.

1. I didn't meet her last year. (since) – \_\_\_\_\_
2. We didn't see him in summer. (since) – \_\_\_\_\_
3. My brother was in hospital in September. (since) – \_\_\_\_\_

---

4. He didn't write any scientific works in 1990. (since) – \_\_\_\_\_

---

5. They didn't test the equipment last autumn. (since) – \_\_\_\_\_

---

**Model D:** I am learning grammar rules. (today) – I have learned grammar rules today.

1. We are writing a composition now. (this month) – \_\_\_\_\_

---

2. I am finishing reading *Vanity Fair*. (this week) – \_\_\_\_\_

---

3. They are completing the experiments. (this year) – \_\_\_\_\_

4. He is leaving abroad. (today) – \_\_\_\_\_

5. He is going to enter the University. (this year) – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 27. Translate the sentences and put them into the Past Perfect and the Future Perfect adding the suitable adverbial modifier of time.**

1. I have made all the experiments. (by yesterday, by tomorrow) – \_\_\_\_\_

2. We have finished our work. (before he came, before he comes) – \_\_\_\_\_

3. He has written the article. (by last week, by next week) – \_\_\_\_\_

4. She has passed her exams. (before the new academic year began, before the new academic year begins) – \_\_\_\_\_

5. They have completed all the preparations. (by 5 o'clock yesterday, by 5 o'clock tomorrow) – \_\_\_\_\_

6. You have done the greater part of the work. (when we joined you, when we join you) – \_\_\_\_\_

7. The workers have studied all the instructions. (before they got to work, before they get to work) – \_\_\_\_\_

8. We have taken all the necessary steps. (by last autumn, by next summer) – \_\_\_\_\_

9. I have done all exercises. (by the time he came, by the time he comes) – \_\_\_\_\_

10. Our plant has produced new type of vessels. (by last year, when the reconstruction begins) – \_\_\_\_\_

11. The train has gone. (when we came to the station, by 5 o'clock) – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 28. Put the sentences into the interrogative and the negative forms.**

1. I have been to the picture gallery. – \_\_\_\_\_

2. We have seen the new film. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. He has taken books from the library. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. She has changed very much. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. They have improved their behaviour. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. Our students have made great progress in English. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

7. Your friend has told me about the accident. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. He has rung me up. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. They had begun the experiment by last month. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

10. The secretary had typed the letters by 12 o'clock. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

11. The train had arrived before they came to the station. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

12. The committee will have drafted the plan by tomorrow. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

13. The librarian will have registered all the books by the end of the month. – \_\_\_\_\_
14. I'll have returned by the time of your departure. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

15. We will have obtained the necessary data by next week. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

**Ex. 29. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Indefinite and the Present Perfect Tenses.**

1. Look! They (*to stop*) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I (*to want*) \_\_\_\_\_ to see you. I (*not / to see*) \_\_\_\_\_ you for ages!
3. – What (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ your name? – My name (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ always Cole.
4. – You (*to read*) \_\_\_\_\_ this book? – Yes. – What you (*to think*) \_\_\_\_\_ of it?
5. I (*not / to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ to a zoo before. It (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ a nice feeling to go somewhere you never (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ before.
6. – You (*to know*) \_\_\_\_\_ Nick? – Yes. – How long you (*to know*) \_\_\_\_\_ him? – I (*to know*) \_\_\_\_\_ him for 10 years.
7. There (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of things I (*to want*) \_\_\_\_\_ to do for a long time and I (*not / to do*) \_\_\_\_\_ them.
8. You (*to realize*) \_\_\_\_\_ we (*to know*) \_\_\_\_\_ each other for quite a period of time now? And this (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ the first occasion you (*to ask*) \_\_\_\_\_ me to come with you.
9. – You (*to know*) \_\_\_\_\_ the girl who just (*to leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ the shop? – Yes, that (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ Bella York. – She (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ a customer of yours? – Not, exactly. She (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ here several times, but she never (*to buy*) \_\_\_\_\_ anything.
10. Come in, I (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ awake since sun-up.
11. I (*not / to see*) \_\_\_\_\_ your pictures for a long time. Can I look round?

12. It'll be good to see him again. How long he *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ away?  
It *(to seem)* \_\_\_\_\_ ages.

13. I *(to know)* \_\_\_\_\_ you nearly all my life, but I never *(to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ you excited about anything.

**Ex. 30. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite Tenses.**

1. A: You ever *(to visit)* \_\_\_\_\_ Chicago?  
B: Yes, I *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ there several times.  
C: Yes, I *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ there a few years ago.
2. A: You *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ to the Ryan's lately?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
C: Yes, I *(to go)* \_\_\_\_\_ there last night.
3. A: He *(to speak)* \_\_\_\_\_ to you about his plans recently?  
B: No, he \_\_\_\_\_.  
C: No, he *(to go)* \_\_\_\_\_ to Vilnius last week and *(not / to arrive)* \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
4. A: You *(to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ your brother this morning?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
C: No, I *(not / to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ him since last Monday.
5. A: You *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ here before?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
C: Yes, I *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ here last year.
6. A: You *(to go)* \_\_\_\_\_ to the theatre last week?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
C: I *(to go)* \_\_\_\_\_ to the Bolshoi Theatre.
7. A: You *(to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ the new monument in that street?  
B: No, I *(not / to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ it yet.  
C: No, I *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ there on Friday but I *(not / to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ the monument.
8. A: You ever *(to show)* \_\_\_\_\_ your water-colours to anybody?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
C: Yes, I *(to show)* \_\_\_\_\_ them to my friends a few days ago.

**Ex. 31. Open the brackets using the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Past Indefinite or the Present Perfect Tenses.**

1. In the morning, coming down the stairs, Rosemary *(to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ Tony *(to lie)* \_\_\_\_\_ in the sitting room: – What you *(to do)* \_\_\_\_\_ here? – I *(to sleep)* \_\_\_\_\_ here. – I am sorry we *(to take)* \_\_\_\_\_ your room.
2. He's a night watchman. He works at night and *(to sleep)* \_\_\_\_\_ in the daytime. It's noon now, and he still *(to sleep)* \_\_\_\_\_.

3. I first *(to meet)* \_\_\_\_\_ Richard a month ago, and I *(to meet)* \_\_\_\_\_ him several times since then.
4. I usually *(to go)* \_\_\_\_\_ to bed before midnight.
5. I *(to sit)* \_\_\_\_\_ here all night and I swear I *(not / to doze)* \_\_\_\_\_ for a moment.
6. – What's your brother doing? – He *(to play)* \_\_\_\_\_ tennis with our neighbour, they *(to play)* \_\_\_\_\_ it every day.
7. He wants to buy a car, but first he must learn how to drive, so he *(to take)* \_\_\_\_\_ driving lessons.
8. I *(to write)* \_\_\_\_\_ to my parents a fortnight ago, but I've not had a reply, so I just *(to write)* \_\_\_\_\_ again.
9. – Where is my daughter? – She *(to talk)* \_\_\_\_\_ to a policeman.  
– What *(to happen)* \_\_\_\_\_? – She *(to drive)* \_\_\_\_\_ without a licence.
10. It's 3 p.m. and he *(not / to eat)* \_\_\_\_\_ anything today, but he *(to eat)* \_\_\_\_\_ a good dinner last night.
11. – Is Mary ready to come out? – No, she still *(to dress)* \_\_\_\_\_.
12. I *(to read)* \_\_\_\_\_ this book several times. I first *(to read)* \_\_\_\_\_ it in 1990.
13. He often *(to read)* \_\_\_\_\_ detective stories; he *(to read)* \_\_\_\_\_ a very good one now.
14. She *(not / to have)* \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday since 2007, but she *(to have)* \_\_\_\_\_ a very long holiday in 2008.
15. – We *(to stay)* \_\_\_\_\_ here for nearly a week. – I hope you *(not / to think)* \_\_\_\_\_ of leaving.

**Ex. 32. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Indefinite and the Past Perfect.**

1. We *(to sit)* \_\_\_\_\_ down to the table only when all the guests *(to arrive)* \_\_\_\_\_.
2. There *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ a curious expression on his face I never *(to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ before.
3. Almost opposite *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ that gallery where she first *(to meet)* \_\_\_\_\_ him and John.
4. He *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher at the University, as his father *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ before him.
5. There *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ silence after she *(to go)* \_\_\_\_\_.
6. From downstairs *(to come)* \_\_\_\_\_ the sound of a radio playing a song he never *(to hear)* \_\_\_\_\_ before.
7. And, paying for what he *(not / to eat)* \_\_\_\_\_, he *(to go)* \_\_\_\_\_ out, passing two acquaintances without sign of recognition.
8. Very deliberately and carefully Poirot *(to retell)* \_\_\_\_\_ the conversation he *(to hold)* \_\_\_\_\_ with Saitrana at Wessex House.

9. Julia, who (to go) \_\_\_\_\_ half way down one flight, (to come) \_\_\_\_\_ back.
10. There (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ something vaguely familiar about her face but I couldn't remember where I (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ her before.
11. He (to re-read) \_\_\_\_\_ what he (to write) \_\_\_\_\_.
12. When Val (to leave) \_\_\_\_\_ them, Soames and Winifred (to make) \_\_\_\_\_ their way to the Cheshire Cheese.
13. She (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ ill for two days when we (to learn) \_\_\_\_\_ about it.
14. About twenty people already (to arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ when they (to enter) \_\_\_\_\_ the hall.
15. We (not / to go) \_\_\_\_\_ far when we suddenly (to notice) \_\_\_\_\_ the dark clouds on the horizon.

**Ex. 33. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous or the Past Perfect Tenses.**

1. He (to close) \_\_\_\_\_ the window and (to sit) \_\_\_\_\_ in his armchair, reading a newspaper.
2. When I (to arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture already (to start) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The rain (to stop) \_\_\_\_\_ and the sun (to shine) \_\_\_\_\_ brightly.
4. Unfortunately when I arrived Ann just (to leave) \_\_\_\_\_, so we only had time for a few words.
5. I (to watch) \_\_\_\_\_ his eyes pretty closely while we (to exchange) \_\_\_\_\_ these remarks.
6. When we (to reach) \_\_\_\_\_ the field, the game already (to start) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. He suddenly (to realize) \_\_\_\_\_ that he (to travel) \_\_\_\_\_ in the wrong direction.
8. When I (to look) \_\_\_\_\_ for my passport, I (to find) \_\_\_\_\_ this old photograph.
9. You looked very busy when I saw you last night. What you (to do) \_\_\_\_\_?
10. He (not / to be) \_\_\_\_\_ there five minutes, when the storm (to begin) \_\_\_\_\_.
11. He (not / to allow) \_\_\_\_\_ us to go out in the boat yesterday as a strong wind (to blow) \_\_\_\_\_.
12. I (to call) \_\_\_\_\_ Paul at 7.00 but it wasn't necessary because he already (to get) \_\_\_\_\_ up.
13. When I (to hear) \_\_\_\_\_ his knock I (to go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the door and (to open) \_\_\_\_\_ it, but I (not / to recognize) \_\_\_\_\_ him at first because I (not / to wear) \_\_\_\_\_ my glasses.
14. When he (to seal and to stamp) \_\_\_\_\_ the envelope, he (to go) \_\_\_\_\_ back to the window and (to draw) \_\_\_\_\_ a long breath.

15. – I (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ you yesterday from the bus. Why you (to use) \_\_\_\_\_ a stick? – I (to use) \_\_\_\_\_ it because I (to hurt) \_\_\_\_\_ my leg that morning.

16. We (to return) \_\_\_\_\_ home at nightfall and we (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ very glad to get home again, but we (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ a wonderful day.

17. As they (to walk) \_\_\_\_\_ along the road they (to hear) \_\_\_\_\_ a car coming from behind them. Tom (to turn) \_\_\_\_\_ round and (to hold) \_\_\_\_\_ up his hand. The car (to stop) \_\_\_\_\_.

18. When I (to arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ at the station Mary (to wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for me. She (to wear) \_\_\_\_\_ a blue dress and (to look) \_\_\_\_\_ very pretty.

19. When I (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ him he (to paint) \_\_\_\_\_ a portrait of his wife.

20. While he (to water) \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers it (to begin) \_\_\_\_\_ to rain.

21. While I (to say) \_\_\_\_\_ goodbye to the rest of the guests Isabel (to take) \_\_\_\_\_ Sophie aside.

**Ex. 34. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Indefinite, the Future Indefinite and the Future Perfect Tenses.**

1. He (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ here for two hours by the time you (to come) \_\_\_\_\_ back.

2. It (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ very late. They (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ back soon.

3. – There (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ no planes tonight. – Never mind, I (to go) \_\_\_\_\_ by train.

4. You (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ angry if I (to talk) \_\_\_\_\_ to you about it?

5. By the time you (to finish) \_\_\_\_\_ cooking they (to do) \_\_\_\_\_ their work.

6. – I (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ afraid, my train (to leave) \_\_\_\_\_ by that time. – (not / to worry) \_\_\_\_\_, I (to drive) \_\_\_\_\_ you home.

7. I hope it (to stop) \_\_\_\_\_ snowing by tomorrow morning.

8. If you (to think) \_\_\_\_\_ it over you (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ I am right.

9. If you (not / to take) \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi, you (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ late. By the time you (to get) \_\_\_\_\_ to the theatre the first act (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ over and you (to miss) \_\_\_\_\_ the most interesting dialogues.

**Обзорные упражнения**

**Ex. 35. Translate into Russian.**

1. Before the exhibition closes 80 to 90 thousand people will have attended it.

2. Therefore, when the acceleration is sufficiently large, the lag will have increased.

3. By 1947 they had decided that their work had uncovered and new field of scientific endeavour.

4. The once rich soils had turned into desert before they occupied the land.

5. I had been my father's assistant during the holidays for 12 years.



6. He settled down in India because he had made several earlier visits there.
7. We had agreed on these matters long before we had chosen the field of our joint investigations.
8. No one organization has been predominately successful in exploiting the design.
9. He has for many years been in the forefront of research into important areas of operation research methodology.
10. We have discussed an approach to adaptive control in this paper.

***Ex. 36. Read and translate the text.***

Scientific progress has been two-dimensional. First, the range of questions and problems to which science has been applied has been continuously extended. Second, science has continuously increased the efficiency with which inquiry can be conducted. The products of scientific inquiry then are: 1) a body of information and knowledge which enables us better to control the environment in which we live, and, 2) a body of procedures which enables us better to add to this body of information and knowledge.

Science both informs and instructs! The body of information generated by science and the knowledge of how to use it are two products of science. As already indicated, we will not be concerned here with the body of information and knowledge which it has generated: that is not with the specific theories, laws, and facts that have been developed in the various physical life, and behavioral science. Instead we will be concerned with the procedures by which science generates this body of knowledge, the process of inquiry.

***Ex. 37. Translate the text.***

Fifty years from now the wonders of the Cosmic Age will have unfolded before the eyes of mankind. Several expeditions already will have gone to Mars and Venus and exploratory voyages will have been extended as far as Jupiter and Saturn and their natural satellites.

Voyages to the Moon will have become commonplace. Not unlikely the exploratory work presently going on in Antarctica, the surface of the Moon will have been subdivided into spheres of interest by major powers, and much prospecting, surveying, and even a limited amount of actual mining operations of precious ores and minerals will be conducted.

At some particularly suitable spots on the Moon housing structures will have been established. They may be operated for the purpose of “attracting” more traffic of scientists and explorers to man laboratories and observatories.

#### 14.4. Времена совершенной продленной группы (the Perfect Continuous Tenses) [*have been + Ving*]

Времена группы Perfect Continuous выражают длительное действие и переводятся на русский язык глаголом несовершенного вида в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем времени соответственно.

Времена группы Perfect Continuous образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to be** в соответствующей форме Present, Past или Future Perfect и смыслового глагола с окончанием **-ing** (или Participle I).

Отрицательная и вопросительная формы образуются так же, как и в других сложных временах:

*We have not been handling cargo for three hours.* – Мы не обрабатываем груз уже три часа.

*Had I been handling cargo for a long time when the captain came?* – Я уже долго обрабатывал груз, когда пришел капитан?

*Yes, I had been.* – Да. *No, I hadn't been.* – Нет.

##### 14.4.1. The Present Perfect Continuous Tense [*have / has been + Ving*]

Present Perfect Continuous выражает длительное действие, начавшееся до момента речи и все еще продолжающееся в момент речи. Present Perfect Continuous переводится на русский язык глаголом в настоящем времени часто с добавлением наречия *уже*:

*They have been handling cargo for two hours.* – Они обрабатывают груз уже 2 часа.

##### 14.4.2. The Past Perfect Continuous Tense [*had been + Ving*]

Past Perfect Continuous выражает длительное действие, протекавшее до указанного момента в прошлом и часто продолжавшееся и после этого момента:

*They had been handling cargo for two hours before you came.* – Они обрабатывали груз в течение двух часов, до того как вы пришли.

##### 14.4.3. The Future Perfect Continuous Tense [*will have been + Ving*]

Future Perfect Continuous выражает длительное будущее действие, которое начнется ранее другого будущего действия или момента и будет еще совершаться в момент его наступления:

*When the ship return to the port, the sailors **will have been waiting** for several hours. – Когда корабль вернется в порт, моряки уже **будут ждать** в течение нескольких часов.*

При употреблении времен группы Perfect Continuous всегда указывается, как долго совершается, совершалось, или будет совершаться действие.

Сравните:

Временная форма	Пример	Перевод
Present Perfect Continuous	We <i>have been handling</i> cargo for three hours	Мы <i>обрабатываем</i> груз уже три часа
Present Continuous	We <i>are handling</i> cargo now	Мы <i>обрабатываем</i> груз сейчас
Past Perfect Continuous	I <i>had been handling</i> cargo for a long time when the captain came	Я уже долго <i>обрабатывал</i> груз, когда пришел капитан
Past Continuous	I <i>was handling</i> cargo when the captain came	Я <i>обрабатывал</i> груз, когда пришел капитан

Далее в табл. 14.1 представлены все времена активного залога на примере правильного глагола to ask – asked – asked (спрашивать) и неправильного глагола to take – took – taken (брать).

Таблица 14.1

Времена активного залога (Active Voice Tenses)

Вид	Present	Past	Future	Временные указатели
1	2	3	4	5
Indefinite	<b>do (does), V1(s)</b> <i>ask(s)</i> <i>take(s)</i> <i>спрашивает</i> <i>берёт</i>	<b>did, V2(ed)</b> <i>asked</i> <i>took</i> <i>спрашивал</i> <i>брал</i>	<b>will + V1</b> <i>will ask</i> <i>will take</i> <i>спросит</i> <i>возьмёт</i>	usually, seldom, ago, every day, always, today, yesterday, tomorrow
Continuous	<b>am + V(ing)</b> <b>is + V(ing)</b> <b>are + V(ing)</b> <i>am asking</i> <i>is taking</i> <i>are asking</i> <i>спрашивает</i> <i>берёт</i>	<b>was + V(ing)</b> <b>were + V(ing)</b>  <i>was asking</i> <i>were taking</i> <i>спрашивал</i> <i>брал</i>	<b>will be + V(ing)</b>  <i>will be asking</i> <i>will be taking</i> <i>будет спрашивать</i> <i>будет брать</i>	during, for, now, at this moment, at present, from 5 to 7

1	2	3	4	5
Perfect	<b>have + V3(ed)</b> <b>has + V3(ed)</b> <i>have asked</i> <i>has taken</i> <i>спросил</i> <i>взял</i>	<b>had + V3(ed)</b> <i>had asked</i> <i>had taken</i> <i>спросил</i> <i>взял</i>	<b>will have + V3(ed)</b> <i>will have asked</i> <i>will have taken</i> <i>спросит</i> <i>возьмёт</i>	ever, never, just, already, yet, lately, since, when he came
Perfect Continuous	<b>have been + V(ing)</b> <b>has been + V(ing)</b> <i>have been asking</i> <i>has been taking</i> <i>спрашивает,</i> <i>берёт</i>	<b>had been + V(ing)</b> <i>had been asking</i> <i>had been taking</i> <i>спрашивал</i> <i>брал</i>	<b>will have been + V(ing)</b> <i>will have been ask- ing</i> <i>will have been tak- ing</i> <i>будет спрашивать</i> <i>будет брать</i>	by the time, since morning, for 3 hours, since he came

### Тренировочные упражнения

#### Ex. 38. Translate the sentences in the Perfect Continuous Tenses.

- How long have you been working on your report?
- Here you are at last! I have been waiting for you for twenty minutes.
- She has been speaking over the telephone long enough; it's time for her to stop talking.
- It has been snowing steadily the whole week and it is still snowing.
- They have been discussing this question since I came here.
- He has been working at the language all the time and has made great progress.
- They had been driving in the car for many hours before they came to the cross-roads.
- The scientists had been carrying out experiments for 2 years before they achieved satisfactory results.
- It had been raining for two weeks before the weather cleared up.
- The students had been writing the test paper for 2 hours when the bell rang.
- We felt tired as we had been repairing the engine for a long time.
- By next year he will have been working at the plant for 20 years.
- When you come in the evening we will have been making the experiment for 7 hours.
- He has been living in Moscow for 5 years.
- For how long have you been doing your morning exercises?
- Since when have you been making preparations?

20. I have been teaching at the Institute for 10 years and by next year I will have been writing my doctoral thesis for 5 years.

**Ex. 39. Put the verb in brackets into the Future Perfect Continuous Tense.**

1. By the end of this month we (*to learn*) \_\_\_\_\_ this language for ten years.

2. When my daughter goes to school we (*to live*) \_\_\_\_\_ here for over five years.

3. When the new century begins, they (*to reconstruct*) \_\_\_\_\_ this church for nearly 25 years.

4. If nobody stops him, he (*to grumble*) \_\_\_\_\_ for hours.

5. We can there at 7 at the earliest. They will be painting the fence. If we arrive at 8.30, they (*to paint*) \_\_\_\_\_ it for 3 hours at least; and if we come at 9.30, they will have probably finished the work.

**Ex. 40. Use the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect Continuous Tense.**

1. He had barely entered the room when his secretary said: "Somebody (*to ring*) \_\_\_\_\_ for you for the last five minutes."

2. I (*to read*) \_\_\_\_\_ Shakespeare in your absence and now I (*to try*) \_\_\_\_\_ to learn this beautiful sonnet.

3. – What the children (*to do*) \_\_\_\_\_? – They (*to play*) \_\_\_\_\_ games all morning and now they (*to learn*) \_\_\_\_\_ to tell time by the position of the sun.

4. – Our friends (*to leave*) \_\_\_\_\_. – How long they (*to stay*) \_\_\_\_\_ with you?

5. – What you (*to think*) \_\_\_\_\_ about? – I (*not / to think*) \_\_\_\_\_, I (*to count*) \_\_\_\_\_ the birds in the sky.

6. – Where's my daughter? – She (*to talk*) \_\_\_\_\_ to a policeman. – What's happened? – She (*to drive*) \_\_\_\_\_ without a license.

7. What you (*to do*) \_\_\_\_\_ to yourself since I've been away?

8. – Florence, dear, I (*to look*) \_\_\_\_\_ for you everywhere. – What's happened? – Mr. Cusak (*to wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ for you in the house.

**Ex. 41. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Continuous Tenses.**

1. We (*to meet*) \_\_\_\_\_ before?

2. I often (*to see*) \_\_\_\_\_ his name in the papers this year.

3. I (*to try*) \_\_\_\_\_ to catch the waiter's attention for about 15 minutes now.

4. She (*to study*) \_\_\_\_\_ English for a year and (*to learn*) \_\_\_\_\_ many words and expressions.

5. I (*not / to hear*) \_\_\_\_\_ about him since yesterday.
6. I (*to look*) \_\_\_\_\_ for him since I finished my lesson but I (*not / to find*) \_\_\_\_\_ him. I (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ to his office and to the laboratory but he isn't there.
7. – Hello, Sven. You (*to see*) \_\_\_\_\_ Alex yet? – No, I (*not / to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the shop floor today. I (*to talk*) \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone to our clients all morning.
8. I (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ up here since about six. I (*to wander*) \_\_\_\_\_ around for hours.
9. I (*to come*) \_\_\_\_\_ to you to invite you for a ride in the car.
10. I expect these young men (*to inform*) \_\_\_\_\_ you who I am.
11. I really don't know what you (*to do*) \_\_\_\_\_ there all this time.
12. I (*to love*) \_\_\_\_\_ you ever since I first saw you.
13. And that's where they (*to stay*) \_\_\_\_\_ ever since.

**Ex. 42. Put the verbs into the correct form, the Past Perfect Continuous or the Past Continuous.**

**Models:** Their swimming suits were wet. – They had been swimming.  
She was in the swimming pool. – She was swimming.

1. The boy was leaning against the tree, out of breath. He (*to run*) \_\_\_\_\_ very fast.
2. He came into the kitchen. His parents stopped talking. They (*to talk*) \_\_\_\_\_ about him.
3. She came into the room. Her husband was at his desk. He (*to write*) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. When the newlyweds arrived at the restaurant, their guests (*to wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ for them. They felt rather hungry because they (*to wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.
5. Julia (*to stand*) \_\_\_\_\_ at the bus stop for twenty minutes when Ivo drove up and got out of the car.

**Ex. 43. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous, the Past Perfect and the Past Perfect Continuous Tenses.**

1. How your chief (*to find out*) \_\_\_\_\_ that you (*to come*) \_\_\_\_\_ to work late?
2. I (*to leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ my house yesterday in a hurry, but I (*not / to go*) \_\_\_\_\_ far before I (*to discover*) \_\_\_\_\_ that it (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ going to rain and I (*to leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ my umbrella at home.
3. He told me that his aunt (*to live*) \_\_\_\_\_ with them for three months.
4. The discovery of the art of writing (*to enable*) \_\_\_\_\_ the Ancient Egyptians to remember what their ancestors (*to do*) \_\_\_\_\_ before them.

5. The Romans (*to destroy*) \_\_\_\_\_ Jerusalem with fire and (*to kill*) \_\_\_\_\_ many of the inhabitants.
6. He scarcely (*to get*) \_\_\_\_\_ outside the door when he (*to hear*) \_\_\_\_\_ Wardle's voice talking loudly.
7. I knew right away that that was the place I (*to look for*) \_\_\_\_\_ all my life.
8. At nine o'clock that evening a long black Packard roaster (*to draw*) \_\_\_\_\_ up to her door, and Arnie (*to step*) \_\_\_\_\_ out of the front seat where he (*to sit*) \_\_\_\_\_ with the driver and a girl between them.
9. Mrs. Monroe put down the telephone receiver. She (*to ring*) \_\_\_\_\_ twice and each time the answer (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ the same: Miss Marple was out.
10. I (*to shout*) \_\_\_\_\_ to him to stop, but at that moment he (*to run*) \_\_\_\_\_ too fast to hear.
11. He (*to pick*) \_\_\_\_\_ up the book he (*to read*) \_\_\_\_\_ before I (*to come*) \_\_\_\_\_ into the room, and (*to turn*) \_\_\_\_\_ the corner of the page to mark the place where he (*to stop*) \_\_\_\_\_ reading.
12. He (*not / to eat*) \_\_\_\_\_ since nine that morning and his stomach (*to growl*) \_\_\_\_\_ with hunger.
13. No sooner they (*to arrive*) \_\_\_\_\_ at this point than a most violent and startling knocking was heard at the door.

**Ex. 44. Translate the sentences paying attention to the predicates.**

1. The research team has put forward a new theory.
2. We have found the answer to the problem.
3. The group has completed the statistical analyses of the data.
4. Our students have revised a number of concepts on environmental protection.
5. You have succeeded in determining how the reaction took place.
6. The scientist has developed new and exact methods for obtaining low temperature.
7. The experiments have confirmed the hypotheses he had advanced.
8. We hadn't yet analyzed the results when the commission arrived.
9. The latest data we have obtained are very interesting.
10. He had taken readings from apparatus and recorded data when suddenly the equipment broke down.
11. The new model had passed all the tests by last month.
12. The labour productivity will have grown twice by next decade.
13. The conference will have considered all the questions by next week.
14. We will have installed the equipment by the time you come.
15. He will have tested the new approach to robot-making before it is factory-proved.
16. We have designed this electronic equipment to speed up production.

17. The scientist has chosen several possible solutions.
18. The engineer asked us if we had ever seen a jet engine in action.
19. The newspaper reported that some hours before there had taken place a launching of a new rocket.
20. They will have shipped the goods when the documents are received.

### Обзорные упражнения

#### *Ex. 45. Translate into English.*

1. Завтра в это время мы будем подъезжать к городу.
2. Он уехал в Израиль в 1963 году и с тех пор живет там.
3. Он работал на этом заводе уже 15 лет, когда началась перестройка.
4. Мы пришли на ферму, когда солнце еще светило.
5. Все уже закончат эксперимент к тому времени, когда мы вернемся.
6. Закройте окно. Начался снегопад, и стало очень холодно. Погода сильно изменилась со вчерашнего вечера.
7. Когда я вошел в деканат, секретарь отложила документы, которые просматривала, и предложила пройти к декану.
8. Они не сделают успехов в английском языке до тех пор, пока не начнут работать более усердно.
9. Было жарко, так как солнце уже взошло.
10. Я напишу вам после того, как переговорю с профессором.
11. Я знаю его с детства и могу сказать, что он очень пунктуальный человек.
12. Собрание ученых нашего университета уже началось.
13. Если она придет после того, как я уйду, передайте ей те документы, что лежат у меня на столе.
14. Уже несколько дней море штормит, и с понедельника не было парама на Сахалин. Мы выедем из Ванино, как только будет паром.
15. Мы шли по горной тропе уже около часа, когда, наконец, увидели небольшую лачугу на вершине склона. Я сразу понял, что это то самое место, о котором мне говорил брат. Мы подошли к лачуге и постучали. Какая-то старуха сидела у окна и спала. Услышав стук, она проснулась, встала и пошла к двери.
16. Сегодня я пошел в министерство, чтобы встретиться с министром. Мы договорились встретиться в 4 часа дня. Когда я пришел в министерство, секретарь сказала мне, что министр еще не вернулся с конференции, и просила меня подождать немного. Я сел в кресло и начал читать журнал, который купил в метро по дороге в министерство. В то время как я читал журнал, пришел министр. Он извинился и сказал, что опоздал, так как конференция закончилась позже, чем он ожидал.



17. Вчера вечером я ожидал поезд на станции. Я заметил, что человек, который стоял рядом со мной, внимательно на меня смотрит. Присмотревшись, я узнал своего друга, с которым учился в школе. Мы не виделись уже десять лет и были очень рады, что наконец-то встретились.

## ТЕМА 15. СОГЛАСОВАНИЕ ВРЕМЕН (THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES)

При употреблении сложных придаточных предложений следует придерживаться следующих правил согласования времен:

1. Если сказуемое главного предложения выражено глаголом в одной из форм настоящего или будущего времени, то сказуемое дополнительного придаточного предложения может быть выражено любым временем:

*She says that her brother **works** at shipyard.* – Она **говорит**, что ее брат **работает** на судовой верфи.

*She says that her brother **worked** at shipyard.* – Она **говорит**, что ее брат **работал** на судовой верфи.

*She says that her brother **will work** at shipyard.* – Она **говорит**, что ее брат **будет работать** на судовой верфи.

2. Если сказуемое главного предложения выражено глаголом в одной из форм прошедшего времени, то сказуемое дополнительного придаточного предложения выражается одним из прошедших времен:

а) Для выражения действия, одновременного с действием главного предложения, в придаточном предложении употребляются Past Indefinite и Past Continuous, которые переводятся на русский язык настоящим временем:

*She **knew** that I **worked** at shipyard.* – Она **знала**, что я **работаю** на судовой верфи.

*He **thought** that I **was working** at shipyard for a year.* – Он **думал**, что я **работаю** на судовой верфи в течение года.

б) Для выражения действия, предшествующего действию главного предложения, в придаточном предложении употребляется Past Perfect, которое переводится на русский язык прошедшим временем:

*He **said** that he **had worked** at shipyard.* – Он **сказал**, что **работал** на судовой верфи.

с) Для выражения действия, будущего по отношению к действию главного предложения, в придаточном предложении употребляется время Future-in-the-Past:

*I **said** that I **would work** at shipyard.* – Я **сказал**, что **буду работать** на судовой верфи.

## Тренировочные упражнения [2, с. 644]

### *Ex. 1. Translate the sentences paying attention to the tenses.*

1. He said he would take part in the conference.
2. She answered she would never forget us.
3. The professor said that he would deliver lectures on nuclear physics.
4. The student asked if he would have practical training at the plant.
5. The director assured us that he would consider all our proposals.
6. He said that he would be making computations for 2 hours.
7. The laboratory assistant confirmed that he would be taking readings of the apparatus all the evening.
8. She said she would be taking her exam from 9 to 11 a.m.
9. It was clear that the device would be functioning only for half an hour.
10. He asked if we would be still working during the break.
11. He said he would have passed exams by the beginning of the term.
12. She explained that she would have done everything by the appointed time.
13. It was evident that the talks wouldn't have ended by the following week.
14. I was sure they would have received the letter by Saturday.
15. He said that we would have finished the inspection of the new engine by 5 o'clock.
16. He said that by the 1<sup>st</sup> of September he would have been working at the plant for 20 years.
17. She answered that she would have been making the experiment for 7 hours by the time of our arrival.
18. He said that he had been living in the city for 5 years.

## Обзорные упражнения

### *Ex. 2. Translate into English.*

1. Мы не знали, что он болен. — \_\_\_\_\_
2. Они сказали, что вернутся очень скоро. — \_\_\_\_\_
3. Я знал, что она живет в Москве. — \_\_\_\_\_
4. Я знал, что она жила в Москве. — \_\_\_\_\_
5. Он сказал, что знает два иностранных языка. — \_\_\_\_\_
6. Нам только что сообщили, что паром прибыл в порт Ванино. — \_\_\_\_\_
7. Он сказал, что они отдыхают в Крыму с начала августа. — \_\_\_\_\_

8. Я думаю, что стороны придут к соглашению. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
9. Я думал, что он работает над докладом, и поэтому не заходил в комнату. – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Он сказал, что получает распоряжения директора каждую неделю. – \_\_\_\_\_
11. Я чувствовал, что она на меня сердится. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
12. Он сказал следователю, что видел подозреваемых накануне. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
13. Они сообщили нам, что их фирма занимается экспортом сырья. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
14. Мне сказали, что они вернулись с симпозиума вчера. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
15. Он сказал, что принимал душ, когда почтальон принес телеграмму. – \_\_\_\_\_
16. Декан сказал, что в этом журнале часто публикуются статьи по машиностроению. – \_\_\_\_\_
17. Мне сказали, что профессор избран ректором университета. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
18. Он сказал, что уже закончил эксперимент, когда комиссия вернулась. – \_\_\_\_\_
19. Секретарь сказала, что вопрос будет обсужден, когда декан вернется из командировки. – \_\_\_\_\_
20. Мы отправили факс нашим партнерам о том, что закажем у них моторы, если цена будет снижена вдвое. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
21. Мы подтвердили, что сможем написать отчет только после того, как мы получим все необходимые данные. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
22. Я сказал, что прочту эту книгу только после того, как сдам сессию. – \_\_\_\_\_
23. Я читала книгу, которую собираюсь вам порекомендовать, несколько лет назад. Я собираюсь снова ее перечитать. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
24. В прошлом году он учился лучше, чем в этом. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
25. В прошлом десятилетии выпуск продукции был гораздо ниже, чем в этом. – \_\_\_\_\_
-

## TESTS

### Тема 1. Глагол 'to be'

**Ex. 1. Fill in the blanks with the suitable form of the verb 'to be'.**

1. The sky \_\_\_\_\_ very blue today.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ not tired.
3. This shelf \_\_\_\_\_ very heavy.
4. These shelves \_\_\_\_\_ very heavy.
5. The child \_\_\_\_\_ asleep.
6. Look ! This \_\_\_\_\_ Mabel.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ cold. Can you shut the window, please!
8. The castle \_\_\_\_\_ one thousand years old.
9. My brother and I \_\_\_\_\_ good tennis players.
10. Amy \_\_\_\_\_ at home but her parents \_\_\_\_\_ in church.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ a student.
12. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ an archeologist.
13. Last year their son \_\_\_\_\_ 26, so he \_\_\_\_\_ 27 now.
14. Today the weather \_\_\_\_\_ nice, but yesterday it \_\_\_\_\_ cold.
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ cold. Can I have something hot to drink?
16. I \_\_\_\_\_ hungry last night, so I had something to eat.
17. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you at 10 o'clock last Sunday morning?
18. Don't buy those shoes. They \_\_\_\_\_ too expensive.
19. Why \_\_\_\_\_ you so tired yesterday?
20. We must go now. It \_\_\_\_\_ very late.
21. This time last year I \_\_\_\_\_ in England.
22. We \_\_\_\_\_ tired when we arrived home, so we went to bed.
23. Anton Chekhov died in 1904. He \_\_\_\_\_ a famous Russian writer.
24. – Where \_\_\_\_\_ the dogs? – I don't know. They \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden ten minutes ago.

**Ex. 2. Write full sentences. Use 'am', 'is', 'are' each time.**

1. my grandparents, very old – \_\_\_\_\_
2. my desk, very comfortable – \_\_\_\_\_
3. your spectacles, in your bag – \_\_\_\_\_
4. I, not very clever today – \_\_\_\_\_
5. this house, very expensive – \_\_\_\_\_
6. the shops, not open today – \_\_\_\_\_
7. Mr. Wren's grandson, six years old – \_\_\_\_\_
8. the houses in this street, very big – \_\_\_\_\_
9. the examination, not difficult – \_\_\_\_\_
10. those flowers, very beautiful – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Write positive or negative sentences with the verb 'to be'. Both variants are possible.**

1. Brussels \_\_\_\_\_ the capital of Belgium.
2. Pavel Bure \_\_\_\_\_ interested in hockey.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ angry.
4. It \_\_\_\_\_ cold today.
5. The Hague \_\_\_\_\_ in Switzerland.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ afraid of dogs.
7. My hands \_\_\_\_\_ dirty.
8. Russia \_\_\_\_\_ a very big country.
9. The Amur \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe.
10. Diamonds \_\_\_\_\_ cheap.
11. Motor-racing \_\_\_\_\_ a dangerous sport.
12. Squirrels \_\_\_\_\_ big animals.
13. We didn't like that house. It \_\_\_\_\_ very old and it \_\_\_\_\_ large enough.
14. Helen got married when she \_\_\_\_\_ 21 years old.
15. I called you yesterday evening but you \_\_\_\_\_ at home. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you?
16. My son \_\_\_\_\_ at work last week because he \_\_\_\_\_ ill. He's better now.
17. The shops \_\_\_\_\_ open yesterday because it \_\_\_\_\_ a public holiday.
18. – \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ at home at 9.30? – No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ at work.

**Ex. 4. Translate from Russian into English.**

1. Твой брат дома? – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Эта гостиница очень дорогая. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Я интересуюсь искусством. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Все магазины сегодня открыты. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. Моя сестра архитектор. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Они не студенты, они врачи. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. Где они были вчера вечером? – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Его вчера не было в институте. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. Меня там не было. – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ее не будет дома в 5 часов. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Тема 2. Глагол 'to have'.**

**Ex. 1. Fill in the blanks with the suitable form of the verb 'to have'.**

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ roses in the garden.
2. Students \_\_\_\_\_ many exams this term.
3. Magellan \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of ships for voyage.
4. Next academic year he \_\_\_\_\_ practical training at the shipyard.
5. The child \_\_\_\_\_ a blue ball.
6. Look! This plane \_\_\_\_\_ no wings.

7. I \_\_\_\_\_ a terrible toothache last week.
8. Our family \_\_\_\_\_ a nice flat.
9. My brother and I \_\_\_\_\_ good tennis rackets.
10. Amy \_\_\_\_\_ a home but her parents \_\_\_\_\_ no one.

**Ex. 2. Make up sentences, using suitable forms of the verb 'to have'.**

1. my grandparents, a very old house – \_\_\_\_\_
2. I, a very comfortable desk – \_\_\_\_\_
3. she, your spectacles, in my bag – \_\_\_\_\_
4. I, breakfast, yesterday – \_\_\_\_\_
5. the bag, no handle – \_\_\_\_\_
6. they, a car, next month – \_\_\_\_\_
7. Mr. Wren's grandson, six balls – \_\_\_\_\_
8. the houses in this street, no balconies – \_\_\_\_\_
9. the examination, last term, the students – \_\_\_\_\_
10. the woman, very beautiful flowers, in her garden – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Translate from Russian into English.**

1. У них есть три собаки и три кошки. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. У нее большие зеленые глаза. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. У моего брата в прошлом году была серая машина. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Сколько у вас земли? – \_\_\_\_\_
5. У моей сестры красная машина. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. У меня вчера болела голова. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. У вас есть книги по истории транспорта? – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Когда вы пьете чай? – \_\_\_\_\_
9. Мы хорошо проведем завтра время. – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Она хорошо провела отпуск на юге. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Тема 3. Оборот 'there + to be'.**

**Ex. 1. Read the text. Put the verbs in brackets in the necessary form.**

One night in April 1912, a huge new ocean liner crossed the Atlantic. It (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ *The Titanic*. She carried 2 000 passengers. She went very fast, which (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ dangerous because there (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ icebergs around. The passengers (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ a good time when the ship suddenly struck one of these icebergs.

The ship began to sink and the passengers tried to escape, but there *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ not enough lifeboats. Another ship passed nearby. *The Titanic* fired rockets into the air in order to get the other ship's help. But it didn't stop. Two-thirds of the passengers went down with *The Titanic*. It *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ one of the greatest sea disasters of all time.

**Ex. 2. Use the construction 'there + to be' in the necessary tense form.**

1. Look! \_\_\_\_\_ their telephone number in the letter.
2. Kazan is a very old town. \_\_\_\_\_ many old buildings.
3. Excuse me, \_\_\_\_\_ a restaurant near here?
4. How many students \_\_\_\_\_ in your group?
5. I was hungry but \_\_\_\_\_ anything to eat.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ a football match on TV last night.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ many people at the meeting?
8. Look! \_\_\_\_\_ an accident. Call the ambulance!
9. \_\_\_\_\_ 24 hours in a day.
10. This box is empty. \_\_\_\_\_ nothing in it.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ somebody at the airport to meet you when you arrive tomorrow.
12. When we arrived at the cinema \_\_\_\_\_ a long queue outside.

**Ex. 3. Ask questions to the following statements.**

1. There is a cat in the window. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. There are a few changes in the text. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

3. There are plenty of glasses in the cupboard. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

4. There were a lot of people at the stadium. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

5. There isn't anything on the plate. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. There wasn't anybody in the room. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. There are difficult exercises in this book. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

8. There is something on the shelf. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. There will be some interesting programmes on TV tomorrow. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

10. There are several empty seats in the room. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

11. There weren't any pears on the plate. – \_\_\_\_\_

---

## Тема 4. Артикль

### **Ex. 1. Fill in the blanks with suitable articles if necessary.**

1. Don't come near me. I've got \_\_\_ sore throat.
2. Olive oil costs 20 rubles per \_\_\_ liter.
3. \_\_\_ voyages to unknown places are quite exciting.
4. We have \_\_\_ nice apartment in \_\_\_ centre of \_\_\_ Paris.
5. I like standing on \_\_\_ deck in \_\_\_ warm weather.
6. It is \_\_\_ autumn. It rains all \_\_\_ day long.
7. \_\_\_ Ancient Greeks believed in \_\_\_ gods.
8. Would you give me \_\_\_ hot tea?
9. \_\_\_ president of \_\_\_ country is \_\_\_ first person in \_\_\_ state.
10. All students have \_\_\_ telephones nowadays.

### **Ex. 2. Choose the right variant.**

1. \_\_\_ Great Britain is washed by \_\_\_ Atlantic Ocean.  
a) – / The;                      b) The / – ;                      c) The / The.
2. It is evident that \_\_\_ people want \_\_\_ peace.  
a) a / the;                      b) the / – ;                      c) – / –.
3. \_\_\_ music is the universal language of the world.  
a) A;                      b) The;                      c) –.
4. \_\_\_ Tudors is the king family.  
a) The;                      b) A;                      c) –.
5. Pushkin is \_\_\_ great Russian poet.  
a) –;                      b) the;                      c) a.
6. The Petrovs has \_\_\_ daughter and \_\_\_ son.  
a) a / a;                      b) the / the;                      c) – / –.
7. \_\_\_ *Titanic* disaster happened in 1912.  
a) A;                      b) –;                      c) The.
8. I am hungry. Give me \_\_\_ sandwich, please.  
a) –;                      b) the ;                      c) a.
9. Boris played \_\_\_ tennis very well.  
a) a;                      b) –;                      c) the.
10. My English teacher brought me \_\_\_ good news. I passed test well.  
a) a;                      b) the;                      c) –.



## Тема 5. Имя существительное

**Ex. 1. Fill in the table.**

<b>Model:</b> man	men
_____	games
child	_____
_____	feet
shelf	_____
_____	sisters-in-law
tomato	_____
_____	data
key	_____
_____	lorries
office manager	_____
_____	boxes

**Ex. 2. Form the plural from the following nouns:**

fox – _____	name – _____	knife – _____
boy – _____	mouse – _____	city – _____
leaf – _____	roof – _____	child – _____
glass – _____	piano – _____	father – _____
sheep – _____	tomato – _____	hat – _____
man – _____	house – _____	brother-in-law – _____
tooth – _____	hospital – _____	town – _____

## Тема 6. Имя прилагательное

**Ex. 1. Choose the right forms in these sentences. In some cases both forms are right.**

1. Is the station much (*further* / *farther*)?
2. You'll find the explanation (*further* / *farther*) on.
3. Your record is (*worse* / *worst*) than mine.
4. It's the (*less* / *lesser*) of two evils.
5. She always wears the (*last* / *latest*) fashion.
6. We have no (*further* / *farther*) information.
7. Nick skates (*good* / *well*).
8. His (*latest* / *last*) words were: "The end".
9. She is the (*oldest* / *eldest*) member of our family.
10. My flat is (*littler* / *smaller*) than yours.
11. I've got (*less* / *lesser*) patience than you.
12. He is much (*older* / *elder*) than his wife.
13. This is the (*more* / *most*) beautiful picture I've ever seen.

14. His English is (*best / better*) than mine.
15. She is (*better / best*) now.
16. It's the (*furthest / farthest*) point west.
17. It's the (*oldest / eldest*) building in the city.
18. He's my (*older / elder*) brother.
19. I'm not hurt in the (*least / less*)!
20. It is the (*more / most*) I can do for you.

**Ex. 2. Translate the words in brackets.**

1. This is (*самая интересная книга*) \_\_\_\_\_ I have ever read on this subject.
2. Swimming is (*самый популярный*) \_\_\_\_\_ summer sport.
3. Shakespeare is (*самый выдающийся*) \_\_\_\_\_ English poet and playwright of all the ages.
4. Coal is (*самый важный*) \_\_\_\_\_ natural resource.
5. He is (*самый умный*) \_\_\_\_\_ man.
6. This jacket is too small. I need (*большой размер*) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. He's not so keen on his studies. He's (*больше интересуется*) \_\_\_\_\_ in sports and music.
8. You'll find your way around the town (*легче*) \_\_\_\_\_ if you have a map.
9. You're making too much noise. Can you be (*потихие*) \_\_\_\_\_?
10. There were a lot of people on the bus. It was (*более заполненным*) \_\_\_\_\_ than usual.
11. You're late. I expected you to be here (*раньше*) \_\_\_\_\_.
12. You hardly ever write to me. Why don't you write (*чаще*) \_\_\_\_\_?
13. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be (*дороже*) \_\_\_\_\_.
14. It's a pity you live so far away. I wish you lived (*поближе*) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 3. Make up sentences using 'not so ... as' or 'as ... as'.**

1. The bus, the train, fast. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. My flat, her flat, big. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. His voice, Caruso's, brilliant. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. The pond, the river, deep. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. Your typing, hers, fast. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. This lecture, that lecture, interesting. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. This hat, that hat, beautiful. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. His article, her article, long. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Use the required form of the adjective in the following sentences:**

1. The sound grew (*faint*) \_\_\_\_\_ and (*faint*) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He's a far (*intelligent*) \_\_\_\_\_ person than my brother.
3. She was the (*practical*) \_\_\_\_\_ of the family.
4. He thought how much (*advanced*) \_\_\_\_\_ and broad-minded the (*young*) \_\_\_\_\_ generation was.
5. I wanted to ask you both what you thought of my (*late*) \_\_\_\_\_ film if you saw it.
6. The first edition of the dictionary is (*good*) \_\_\_\_\_, the new one is still (*good*) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. He turned out to be (*angry*) \_\_\_\_\_ than I had expected.
8. Today I'm not (*wise*) \_\_\_\_\_ than yesterday.
9. The (*much*) \_\_\_\_\_ we go into the matter, the much (*complex*) \_\_\_\_\_ it becomes.
10. Jack is the (*clever*) \_\_\_\_\_ of the three brothers.
11. They are (*good*) \_\_\_\_\_ people, far (*good*) \_\_\_\_\_ than you.
12. He felt (*bad*) \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday than the day before.
13. The (*near*) \_\_\_\_\_ house is three miles away.
14. He was the (*last*) \_\_\_\_\_ man to come.
15. The (*long*) \_\_\_\_\_ the night, the (*short*) \_\_\_\_\_ the day.
16. He is the (*tall*) \_\_\_\_\_ of the two.
17. She is (*amusing*) \_\_\_\_\_ in a small company.
18. My brother is much (*young*) \_\_\_\_\_ than myself.

**Ex. 5. Translate into English.**

1. Он больше занят, чем ты. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Этот год был для нас самым трудным. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ты читал его последнюю статью? – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Ты такая же красивая, как и твоя мать. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. Мне гораздо легче знать правду. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. В прошлом году зима была не такая холодная, как в этом. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. Чем больше мы читаем, тем больше мы знаем о нашем мире. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Я уже старый человек, я в два раза старше вас. – \_\_\_\_\_

## Тема 7. Числительное

### **Ex. 1. Read and write down the numerals.**

1. *The Titanic* was two hundred and sixty-eight metres long, fifty-five metres high and had nine docks. – \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Her cost was four hundred million American dollars. – \_\_\_\_\_
  3. The price of tickets was fifty thousand dollars for the first-class apartments; one thousand four hundred and twenty-four dollars for the first-class passengers; six hundred for the second-class passengers; four hundred and sixty dollars for the third-class passengers. – \_\_\_\_\_
  4. There were two thousand two hundred and twenty-seven people on board and there were only enough lifeboats for one thousand and one hundred of them. – \_\_\_\_\_
  5. *The Titanic* sank with a loss of about one thousand five hundred lives. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 

### **Ex. 2. Choose the correct variant.**

1. 150 \_\_\_\_\_ live in the Russian Federation.  
a) millions people;                      b) millions of people;  
c) million of people;                      d) million people.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ are starving in the world today.  
a) Thousands people;                      b) Thousands of people;  
c) Thousand of people;                      d) Thousand people.
3. You are \_\_\_\_\_ who asks me this stupid question.  
a) fifth;                      b) the fiveth;                      c) the fifth;                      d) five.
4. Two \_\_\_\_\_ of my wage I spend on my food.  
a) twelve;                      b) twelfth;                      c) twelves;                      d) twelfths.
5. Every \_\_\_\_\_ person in our company is not satisfied with his salary.  
a) three;                      b) the third;                      c) third;                      d) the three.
6. Ok! See you on \_\_\_\_\_ of April.  
a) the twentyth-seventh;                      b) twenty-seven;  
c) the twenty-seventh;                      d) the twentieth-seven.
7. It is \_\_\_\_\_ hit. I like such songs.  
a) his the third;                      b) his third;                      c) the third his;                      d) the his third.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ of the territory is covered with ice.  
a) One thirds;                      b) One third;                      c) The first three;                      d) The one three.
9. This bouquet costs \_\_\_\_\_ dollars!  
a) two hundreds;                      b) two hundred;  
c) hundreds two;                      d) two hundred of.
10. A fortnight means \_\_\_\_\_ weeks.  
a) two;                      b) three;                      c) four;                      d) five.



3. There are \_\_\_\_\_ parties that have nice music and pretty decorations.  
a) a few;                                      b) few;                                      c) little.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ people are early risers.  
a) Any;                                      b) Some;                                      c) No.
5. Have you got \_\_\_\_\_ objections?  
a) no;                                      b) some;                                      c) any.
6. You can buy stamps at \_\_\_\_\_ post office.  
a) any;                                      b) some;                                      c) no.
7. I don't know about it; ask \_\_\_\_\_ else.  
a) nobody;                                      b) anybody;                                      c) somebody.
8. I got the book without \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty.  
a) some;                                      b) any;                                      c) no.
9. There is \_\_\_\_\_ new under the sun.  
a) no thing;                                      b) nothing;                                      c) anything.
10. Everybody should be able to defend \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) him;                                      b) himself;                                      c) his own.
11. Selfish people think mainly of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) one another;                                      b) themselves;                                      c) each other.
12. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ jokes.  
a) hers;                                      b) her;                                      c) her's.
13. There is \_\_\_\_\_ uniform school organization or curriculum in the USA.  
a) not;                                      b) no;                                      c) none.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ are so fond of secrets as those who do not mean to keep them.  
a) None;                                      b) Not anybody;                                      c) No one.
15. It was reported that \_\_\_\_\_ were present at the meeting.  
a) both;                                      b) all;                                      c) everybody.
16. \_\_\_\_\_ man has his faults.  
a) Both;                                      b) Both of;                                      c) Every.

**Ex. 2. Put the pronouns 'some', 'any', and 'no'.**

1. Will you have \_\_\_\_\_ more tea?
2. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ idea of what it is going to be?
3. The scientist was in \_\_\_\_\_ need of an interpreter, he knew the language perfectly.
4. I need \_\_\_\_\_ proof of your innocence, I am sure of it.
5. – Are there \_\_\_\_\_ illustrations in this book? – Yes, there are \_\_\_\_\_.
6. There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ matches left, we must buy \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Have you read \_\_\_\_\_ good books lately?
8. There is \_\_\_\_\_ water left in the glass, it's empty.
9. I am very busy and have \_\_\_\_\_ time for idle talks.
10. You may come at \_\_\_\_\_ time that is convenient to you.

**Ex. 3. Put in the pronouns 'many', 'much', 'little', 'few', 'a little', 'a few'.**

1. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ harm in it.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ was said, but \_\_\_\_\_ done.
3. Say \_\_\_\_\_ and do \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Very \_\_\_\_\_ people were present at the conference, as nobody knew about it.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is spoken about it, but \_\_\_\_\_ people believe it.
6. He knows \_\_\_\_\_, but the \_\_\_\_\_ he knows he knows well.
7. The forces were unequal, they were \_\_\_\_\_, we were \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Could you describe a situation in \_\_\_\_\_ words?
9. – Do you know the English language? – Just \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Please, don't make so \_\_\_\_\_ noise.

**Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks with the derivative pronouns 'some', 'any', 'no', 'every'.**

1. We didn't meet \_\_\_\_\_ in the corridor.
2. He doesn't know \_\_\_\_\_ about it.
3. He failed in the exam, because he knew \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He didn't come, \_\_\_\_\_ must have happened.
5. There was \_\_\_\_\_ else in the room except my sister.
6. The task is too difficult. I'm afraid \_\_\_\_\_ can do it.
7. We know \_\_\_\_\_ about it yet.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ expected that he would come.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is waiting for you in the hall.
10. He told \_\_\_\_\_ that was quite unexpected for everybody.

**Ex. 5. Change the following sentences substituting pronouns for the proper names and nouns.**

**Model:** Tom likes the Browns. – *He likes them.*

1. Come with Kitty and me. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Please read this letter. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. The letter is from Nelly. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. I don't know her husband. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. I'm glad to meet both you and Ann. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. We often see our friends. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. I don't like Ann's brother. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Freddy likes to play with his dog. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Extend the statement showing possession. Follow the given model.**

**Model:** This dress belongs to my sister. It's *hers*.

1. These things belong to my husband. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. This coat belongs to me. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. These shoes belong to my wife. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. These pens belong to Tom and Betty. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. This suit-case belongs to you. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. These books and magazines belong to us. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. These toys belong to those children. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. This basket belongs to my sister. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Finish these sentences using the reflexive pronouns.**

**Model:** If you want a job done well, do it \_\_\_\_\_. – If you want a job done well, do it *yourself*.

1. He cannot find anyone to repair the radio, so he will repair it \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I never buy anything until I have seen it \_\_\_\_\_.
3. They say John broke their table, but really they did it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Next year we will live all by \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Did the boys build this boat \_\_\_\_\_?
6. You cannot leave the baby in the house all by \_\_\_\_\_.
7. In our canteen we have to serve \_\_\_\_\_.

## **Тема 9. Наречие**

**Ex. 1. Choose the suitable word from the given in brackets.**

1. I have a (*different, differently*) opinion.
2. They were dressed quite (*different, differently*).
3. His description is not quite (*exact, exactly*).
4. I don't know (*exactly, exact*) what has happened.
5. The work was done (*perfect, perfectly*).
6. The weather in the country was (*perfect, perfectly*).
7. He moved (*slow, slowly*) and (*quiet, quietly*).
8. Her voice was (*quiet, quietly*) and her movements were (*slow, slowly*).
9. It is a very (*serious, seriously*) thing.
10. Do you (*serious, seriously*) wish to go there?
11. The task is quite (*simple, simply*).
12. The question can be answered quite (*simple, simply*).
13. You will have to work (*hard, hardly*) to achieve good results.
14. I could (*hard, hardly*) hear what he said.
15. He was (*near, nearly*) ready with the experiment.



16. He lives quite (*near, nearly*) my house.
17. I have seen very little of him (*late, lately*).
18. You've come too (*late, lately*).
19. His works are (*wide, widely*) known all over the world.

**Ex. 2. Put the adverbs in brackets in the comparative and the superlative degrees.**

1. The (*much*) \_\_\_\_\_ you read, the (*soon*) \_\_\_\_\_ you enlarge your vocabulary.
2. Yesterday he came home (*late*) \_\_\_\_\_ than usually.
3. I like this picture (*well*) \_\_\_\_\_ of all.
4. She was treated (*badly*) \_\_\_\_\_ than anybody else.
5. We were far from our homes, but she suggested that we should go still (*far*) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. She writes dictations (*badly*) \_\_\_\_\_ of all.
7. The fire was put out (*quickly*) \_\_\_\_\_ than we expected.
8. You work (*little*) \_\_\_\_\_ now than you did last year.

**Ex. 3. Translate the adverbs in brackets from Russian into English.**

1. I am (*глубоко*) \_\_\_\_\_ interested in the final settlement of this problem.
2. The equipment was tested (*тщательно*) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He is a (*высоко*) \_\_\_\_\_ educated man.
4. She opened the door (*широко*) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The wind was blowing so (*сильно*) \_\_\_\_\_ that I could (*едва*) \_\_\_\_\_ stand on my feet.
6. (*Вскоре*) \_\_\_\_\_ after graduating from the University I went to Siberia.
7. The only thing that was seen (*ясно*) \_\_\_\_\_ was his mother's face.
8. He was breathing (*тяжело*) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. He shouted (*громко*) \_\_\_\_\_ and (*долго*) \_\_\_\_\_ but no one came.
10. (*Легче*) \_\_\_\_\_ said than done.

**Ex. 4. Reword the sentences, inserting one of the two adverbs suggested in the proper place.**

1. (*pretty, prettily*) It is difficult to speak to her. – \_\_\_\_\_  
(*pretty, prettily*) The hall was decorated. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. (*high, highly*) I saw a plane in the sky. – \_\_\_\_\_  
(*high, highly*) The idea seems improbable. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. (*late, lately*) We have heard very little of him. – \_\_\_\_\_  
(*late, lately*) He usually comes home after classes. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. (*hard, hardly*) I can understand what he is saying. – \_\_\_\_\_  
(*hard, hardly*) You must work at your spelling. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. (*near, nearly*) We were late. – \_\_\_\_\_  
(*near, nearly*) We made sure it was safe before we went. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. (*dear, dearly*) I love my son. – \_\_\_\_\_  
 (*dear, dearly*) They sell these coats. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Choose the right answer.**

1. What \_\_\_\_\_ have you seen at the museum?  
a) still;                                  b) more;                                  c) else.
2. Tom has \_\_\_\_\_ finished his work.  
a) still;                                  b) already;                                  c) yet.
3. – Don't make such a noise! – Are the children \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping?  
a) still;                                  b) yet;                                  c) more.
4. Don't worry. He is \_\_\_\_\_ on the danger list.  
a) no more;                                  b) not longer;                                  c) no longer.
5. I want to go for a walk. Has it stopped snowing \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) else;                                  b) yet;                                  c) still.
6. Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ tea?  
a) any;                                  b) some;                                  c) any more.

## Тема 10. Предлоги

*Ex. 1. Insert the appropriate place and direction prepositions 'at', 'from', 'in', 'to', 'out', 'on', 'near' ('by'), 'out of'.*

1. The boy threw the stone \_\_\_\_\_ the river.
2. He came \_\_\_\_\_ the room, sat \_\_\_\_\_ the table and took his papers \_\_\_\_\_ the brief-case.
3. When the lesson was over, he put his books and copy-books \_\_\_\_\_ the brief-case and came \_\_\_\_\_ the classroom.
4. Winters are usually very cold \_\_\_\_\_ the central part of our country.
5. When do you want to go \_\_\_\_\_ Kiev?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the river there stood two big trees.
7. I lived \_\_\_\_\_ the South for 5 years.
8. I got this book \_\_\_\_\_ the library.
9. Yesterday he got a letter \_\_\_\_\_ his brother.
10. He took the watch \_\_\_\_\_ the pocket and put it \_\_\_\_\_ the table.

**Ex. 2. Translate the time and direction prepositions in brackets.**

1. The post-office is just (*перед*) \_\_\_\_\_ our house.
2. The garden is (*позади*) \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
3. The house stood (*около*) \_\_\_\_\_ the river.
4. He put the basket (*над*) \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
5. The t° was (*ниже*) \_\_\_\_\_ zero.
6. The t° was (*выше*) \_\_\_\_\_ zero.
7. An aeroplane flew (*над*) \_\_\_\_\_ the city.

8. There were (*свыше*) \_\_\_\_\_ one hundred people at the conference.
9. The talks (*между*) \_\_\_\_\_ two countries were fruitful.
10. We couldn't find him (*среди*) \_\_\_\_\_ the students.
11. He travelled (*вокруг*) \_\_\_\_\_ the world.
12. They went either (*на*) \_\_\_\_\_ the Caucasus or (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ the Crimea.
13. Send him (*к*) \_\_\_\_\_ the manager.
14. He has never been (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ England.
15. In the evening I usually go (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ the theatre, (*на*) \_\_\_\_\_ the parties or (*к*) \_\_\_\_\_ my friends.

**Ex. 3. Insert the appropriate prepositions 'till', 'at', 'on', 'to', 'for', 'in'.**

1. I will stay in Odessa \_\_\_\_\_ about two months.
2. I usually leave home \_\_\_\_\_ eight o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
3. The lecture on international situation took place \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning of the month.
4. He came to Moscow \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday \_\_\_\_\_ 7 o'clock p.m.
5. Where are you going \_\_\_\_\_ the 1<sup>st</sup> of January?
6. They came to the station \_\_\_\_\_ a quarter \_\_\_\_\_ eight.
7. It happened \_\_\_\_\_ the 1<sup>st</sup> of June.
8. I saw her \_\_\_\_\_ June.
9. I haven't seen her \_\_\_\_\_ June.
10. We read texts and learn new words \_\_\_\_\_ our lessons.

**Ex. 4. Translate the time prepositions in brackets.**

1. I won't be at home (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ 7 o'clock.
2. He will come back (*через*) \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour.
3. I hope you'll do this work (*за*) \_\_\_\_\_ a month.
4. My brother has English lessons (*по*) \_\_\_\_\_ Fridays.
5. I will be in the library (*с*) \_\_\_\_\_ 2 o'clock.
6. He returned home (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ half past eleven.
7. The bridge was built (*за*) \_\_\_\_\_ several months.
8. I always repeat new words (*перед*) \_\_\_\_\_ the lesson and (*после*) \_\_\_\_\_ the lesson.
9. It is usually very cold (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ January.
10. The Chinese delegation came (*в*) \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the month.

**Ex. 5. Translate the compound prepositions given in brackets.**

1. There is a beautiful garden (*перед*) \_\_\_\_\_ our house.
2. (*Несмотря на*) \_\_\_\_\_ hard living conditions he worked much and became a well-known scientist.
3. Give me a new dictionary (*вместо*) \_\_\_\_\_ the old one.
4. We had to put off our journey (*из-за*) \_\_\_\_\_ rainy weather.

5. (Невзирая на) \_\_\_\_\_ threats he investigated the criminal case thoroughly.

6. In big ports ships are unloaded (при помощи) \_\_\_\_\_ cranes.

**Ex. 6. Choose the appropriate preposition.**

1. The Prime Minister arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the capital on Monday.

a) to;                      b) in;                      c) at.

2. He came \_\_\_\_\_ a two-day official visit at the invitation of the Government.

a) with;                      b) for;                      c) on.

3. I heard it \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.

a) in;                      b) on;                      c) by.

4. I was busy and couldn't listen \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.

a) to;                      b) on;                      c) for.

5. I congratulate you \_\_\_\_\_ the event.

a) on;                      b) with;                      c) for.

6. The conference began \_\_\_\_\_ October 18.

a) at;                      b) in;                      c) on.

7. You will find the news \_\_\_\_\_ the bottom of the newspaper page.

a) at;                      b) in;                      c) on.

8. A glass vase is made \_\_\_\_\_ glass.

a) from;                      b) of;                      c) with.

9. Paper is made \_\_\_\_\_ wood-pulp.

a) from;                      b) with;                      c) out of.

10. What is the name of the sea \_\_\_\_\_ England and France?

a) among;                      b) between;                      c) of.

11. Two Italians were \_\_\_\_\_ the plane when it crashed.

a) on;                      b) in;                      c) by.

12. They were \_\_\_\_\_ business in London.

a) with;                      b) for;                      c) on.

13. We'll go to Rome \_\_\_\_\_ bus.

a) by;                      b) on;                      c) in.

**Тема 11. Союзы**

**Ex. 1. Choose the right variant.**

1. A man is \_\_\_\_\_ old \_\_\_\_\_ he feels.

a) so \_\_\_\_\_ as;                      b) as \_\_\_\_\_ as;                      c) as \_\_\_\_\_ that.

2. The fellow that agrees with everything you say is \_\_\_\_\_ a fool \_\_\_\_\_ he is getting to skin you.

a) both \_\_\_\_\_ and;                      b) not only \_\_\_\_\_ but;                      c) either \_\_\_\_\_ or.

3. Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ needs reforming \_\_\_\_\_ other people's habits.

a) so \_\_\_\_\_ as;                      b) as \_\_\_\_\_ that;                      c) as \_\_\_\_\_ as.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ your daughter \_\_\_\_\_ your niece have made great progress.  
 a) As \_\_\_\_\_ as;                      b) So \_\_\_\_\_ as;                      c) Both \_\_\_\_\_ and.  
 5. Her eyes were \_\_\_\_\_ large \_\_\_\_\_ small.  
 a) either \_\_\_\_\_ or;                      b) neither \_\_\_\_\_ nor;                      c) nor \_\_\_\_\_ or.

**Ex. 2. Insert the proper conjunction.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ he overslept, Clive wasn't late for work.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ they arrive, they'll want to have dinner.
3. I did it \_\_\_\_\_ he told me so.
4. We enjoyed our walk \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.
5. Ask him \_\_\_\_\_ he can do it tomorrow.
6. That is the house \_\_\_\_\_ Shakespeare was born.
7. She used an alarm clock \_\_\_\_\_ to wake up on time.
8. It's Sunday tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_ I don't have to get up early.
9. You should eat more \_\_\_\_\_ you'll make yourself ill.
10. She went to work \_\_\_\_\_ she had a cold.
11. I'm used to getting up early now, \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't like it at first.
12. She was late \_\_\_\_\_ her car had broken down.
13. Mary ordered a taxi \_\_\_\_\_ she could get to the theatre on time.
14. I was listening to the radio \_\_\_\_\_ I heard the news.
15. I haven't written to them \_\_\_\_\_ I came to Moscow.
16. Ann is a very good singer, \_\_\_\_\_ she is going to take part in the school concert.
17. \_\_\_\_\_ he was rather young, he was very experienced.
18. The earthquake occurred \_\_\_\_\_ they were sleeping.
19. This car is fast \_\_\_\_\_ very noisy.
20. She looks \_\_\_\_\_ she is a model.
21. We'll stay in the house \_\_\_\_\_ it stops snowing.
22. I love tennis \_\_\_\_\_ I like swimming too.
23. He admitted \_\_\_\_\_ he hadn't studied at all.
24. You must tell \_\_\_\_\_ there is a problem.
25. Our planet is in grave danger \_\_\_\_\_ human activity.
26. \_\_\_\_\_ I were you I would stop smoking.
27. He ought to go to the dentist \_\_\_\_\_ he has a toothache.
28. This rule is \_\_\_\_\_ difficult \_\_\_\_\_ the one you've already learnt.
29. I cannot do it now \_\_\_\_\_ I am very busy.
30. He will do it \_\_\_\_\_ he comes home.
31. When she sees \_\_\_\_\_ you have done, she will be angry with you.
32. \_\_\_\_\_ I save some of my pocket money, I won't be able to buy a bicycle.
33. Begin with a minute \_\_\_\_\_ two of small talk.
34. It was such a boring film \_\_\_\_\_ I fell asleep in the middle of it.

## Тема 12. Слова-заместители

**Ex. 1. Answer the following questions according to the model. Use the words 'one' or 'ones' instead of the nouns to avoid repetition.**

**Model:** a) Have you got a handbag? (*black*) – Yes, I've got a black *one*.  
b) Has Nelly got winter gloves? (*red*) – Yes, she's got red *ones*.

1. Have you got a raincoat? (*brown*) – \_\_\_\_\_
2. Has she got a bathing-suit? (*yellow*) – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Have they got a car? (*blue*) – \_\_\_\_\_
4. Has she got a new suit? (*grey*) – \_\_\_\_\_
5. Has she got a watch? (*gold*) – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Has Peggy got a summer hat? (*white*) – \_\_\_\_\_
7. Have the boys got a boat? (*green*) – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Has Kate got a new dress? (*pink*) – \_\_\_\_\_
9. Has Jim got new shoes? (*brown*) – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Has Jane got a new pair of stockings? (*black*) – \_\_\_\_\_

---

11. Has Paul got silk ties? (*green and red*) – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Ask the general questions replacing the noun by the words 'one', 'ones' to avoid repetition.**

**Model:** He needs that pencil. (*red*) – Do you mean the red *one*?

1. He wants that bag. (*black*) – \_\_\_\_\_
  2. I need that plate. (*small*) – \_\_\_\_\_
  3. They want these dictionaries. (*English*) – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
4. She wants that cup. (*yellow*) – \_\_\_\_\_
  5. We want those spoons. (*big*) – \_\_\_\_\_
  6. She needs these note-books. (*brown*) – \_\_\_\_\_
  7. I need that novel. (*new*) – \_\_\_\_\_
  8. He wants that knife. (*long*) – \_\_\_\_\_

## Тема 14.1. The Indefinite Active Tenses

**Ex. 1. Write down the following sentences in the singular in the Present Indefinite.**

1. The students work in the laboratory every day. – \_\_\_\_\_
- 
2. My children go to school. – \_\_\_\_\_

3. They get new books from the library every month. – \_\_\_\_\_

4. They usually visit their grandparents on week-ends. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. The postmen bring newspapers twice a day. – \_\_\_\_\_

6. They know many English words. – \_\_\_\_\_

7. My friends take English lessons three times a week. – \_\_\_\_\_

8. The pupils repeat new rules before the lesson. – \_\_\_\_\_

9. We usually read newspapers in the evening. – \_\_\_\_\_

10. The workers come to the factory at 8 o'clock. – \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets in the appropriate tense form.**

1. The delegation (*to start*) \_\_\_\_\_ for London two days ago.

2. The train (*to leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ at 5 p.m. every day.

3. I usually (*to stay*) \_\_\_\_\_ with my friends for the week-end.

4. He (*to finish*) \_\_\_\_\_ the experiment next week.

5. He (*to come*) \_\_\_\_\_ to us only yesterday.

6. He (*to write*) \_\_\_\_\_ letters to his parents every week.

7. He always (*to read*) \_\_\_\_\_ English books in the original.

8. I often (*to speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ with my friend about our plans.

9. He (*to put*) \_\_\_\_\_ the documents on the table and (*to go*) \_\_\_\_\_ out of the room.

10. Last year I often (*to go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the theatre.

11. I (*to read*) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot in childhood.

12. I (*to wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ for you tomorrow.

13. I hope the next mail (*to bring*) \_\_\_\_\_ news from home.

14. He (*to work*) \_\_\_\_\_ in the laboratory the day after tomorrow.

15. He (*to become*) \_\_\_\_\_ an engineer in 5 years.

**Ex. 3. Choose the right verb form.**

1. There \_\_\_\_ not a passion so strongly rooted in the human heart as envy.

a) is;                                      b) were;                                      c) are.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ there millions of stars within our galaxy?

a) is;                                      b) are;                                      c) has \_\_\_\_ been.

3. Civilization will never flow backward while there \_\_\_\_\_ youth in the world.

a) has been;                                      b) are;                                      c) is.

4. There is \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden waiting for you.  
a) Pete;                                      b) your friend;                                      c) a man.
5. There \_\_\_\_\_ ten pens and a magazine on the table.  
a) is;    b) are;    c) was.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ a lecture tomorrow?  
a) Will \_\_\_\_ be;                                      b) Was \_\_\_\_ be;                                      c) Would \_\_\_\_ be.
7. About 85 percent of American students \_\_\_\_\_ public schools  
which are supported by state and local taxes.  
a) attended;                                      b) have attended;                                      c) attend.
8. What \_\_\_\_\_ American public schools teach?  
a) are;    b) do;    c) does.
9. Wise kings generally \_\_\_\_\_ wise councilors.  
a) to have;    b) has;    c) have.
10. All historical places of London \_\_\_\_\_ in the West End.  
a) had been;    b) were    c) are.
11. The city of Montreal \_\_\_\_\_ 70 square miles.  
a) covering;    b) covers;    c) is covered.
12. Man \_\_\_\_\_ live by bread alone.  
a) do not;    b) does not;    c) is not.
13. Perhaps in the future men \_\_\_\_\_ on the sea, away from the  
crowded and noisy cities on land.  
a) will live;    b) would live;    c) are living.
14. The student \_\_\_\_\_ as an apprentice to a trained worker next week.  
a) works;    b) will work;    c) would work.
15. During the apprenticeship period the student \_\_\_\_\_ to earn money.  
a) begins;    b) would begin;    c) will begin.
16. We \_\_\_\_\_ take a vacation this month.  
a) is not;    b) did not;    c) will not.
17. Sir Walter was a proud knight and \_\_\_\_\_ to think that he had to  
submit to the commands of a tyrant lord.  
a) had hated;    b) was hating;    c) hated.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the ancient stone carvings at the museum last week?  
a) Have \_\_\_\_ seen;    b) Did \_\_\_\_ see;    c) Had \_\_\_\_ seen.
19. Dinosaurs \_\_\_\_\_ millions of years ago.  
a) died out;    b) had died out;    c) were died out.
20. In the year 1620 a ship named *The Mayflower* \_\_\_\_\_ 120 English-  
men to the rocky coast of America.  
a) has brought;    b) brought;    c) had brought.



## Tema 14.2. The Continuous Active Tenses

*Ex. 1. Open the brackets, using the appropriate Continuous or Indefinite tense forms.*

1. I wondered why he *(to laugh)* \_\_\_\_\_. I could see nothing funny in what *(to go on)* \_\_\_\_\_.
2. What you two *(to talk)* \_\_\_\_\_ about? You *(to discuss)* \_\_\_\_\_ his plan?
3. You *(to leave)* \_\_\_\_\_ the town early this summer?
4. When you *(to speak)* \_\_\_\_\_ to her about her lessons?
5. She *(to wear)* \_\_\_\_\_ dark spectacles. They are not just sun glasses. She *(not / to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ very well.
6. Why you *(to wear)* \_\_\_\_\_ sun glasses on a grey day like this?
7. He *(to live)* \_\_\_\_\_ with his parents now. I think, he *(to look)* \_\_\_\_\_ for a job.
8. I could not see his face, he *(to sit)* \_\_\_\_\_ so that his face was in shadow.
9. When I *(to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ her last she *(to try)* \_\_\_\_\_ on hats at Angela's.
10. For some fifteen minutes he *(to write)* \_\_\_\_\_ in silence without once raising his eyes from what he *(to write)* \_\_\_\_\_.
11. We *(to walk)* \_\_\_\_\_ for some time. The road *(to get)* \_\_\_\_\_ worse, just a narrow goat trail.
12. You *(to leave)* \_\_\_\_\_ us soon. It *(to get)* \_\_\_\_\_ colder every day.
13. We were friendly at school. I still *(to see)* \_\_\_\_\_ him from time to time.
14. You *(to hear)* \_\_\_\_\_ from me one of these days.
15. Phone as late as you can. I *(to be)* \_\_\_\_\_ up. I *(to watch)* \_\_\_\_\_ the football game on TV. It's the semi-finals tonight.
16. The rain started when I *(to wait)* \_\_\_\_\_ for my bus.
17. Why did you speak to him so? He only *(to try)* \_\_\_\_\_ to help.
18. I hate the place in autumn. It always *(to rain)* \_\_\_\_\_ there. It *(to rain)* \_\_\_\_\_ when we came and it *(to rain)* \_\_\_\_\_ when we left.

**Ex. 2. Choose the right variant.**

- How much \_\_\_\_\_ this sweater cost?  
a) is;    b) does;    c) do.
- It often \_\_\_\_\_ in this part of the world.  
a) is raining;                                b) rains.
- I don't know Spanish, but I \_\_\_\_\_ it now.  
a) am learning;                              b) learn.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ stay at home on Sundays.  
a) am not;                                     b) doesn't;                                     c) don't.
- That hotel \_\_\_\_\_ expensive.  
a) doesn't;                                    b) isn't;                                        c) don't.



4. He (*to refuse*) \_\_\_\_\_ to make the experiment because he is very busy now.
5. She (*to finish*) \_\_\_\_\_ already translating the text.
6. – You (*to travel*) \_\_\_\_\_ ever to the North? – No, I (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ never there.
7. – You (*to be*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the Hermitage? – Yes, I (*to visit*) \_\_\_\_\_ it many times.
8. We (*to finish*) \_\_\_\_\_ our work before he came.
9. He said he (*to change*) \_\_\_\_\_ his plans.
10. The rain (*to stop*) \_\_\_\_\_ and the sun was shining brightly.
11. We (*to test*) \_\_\_\_\_ all the devices by yesterday.
12. By this time tomorrow I (*to make*) \_\_\_\_\_ all the necessary measurements.
13. The group (*to complete*) \_\_\_\_\_ the data analysis before the experiment begins.
14. He (*to repair*) \_\_\_\_\_ the engine when you come.
15. The device (*to stop*) \_\_\_\_\_ functioning by next week if you don't check it.

**Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate Perfect Continuous tense forms.**

1. It seems to me I (*to ring*) \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour at least.
2. They (*to play*) \_\_\_\_\_ chess for 2 days already.
3. He (*to work*) \_\_\_\_\_ at his thesis for 3 years.
4. They (*to discuss*) \_\_\_\_\_ this question for a long time and haven't yet come to any conclusion.
5. What you (*to do*) \_\_\_\_\_ since our last meeting?
6. It (*not / to rain*) \_\_\_\_\_ for more than two months when suddenly the storm broke out.
7. The musician (*to practice*) \_\_\_\_\_ the passage hour after hour until he mastered it at once.
8. The committee (*to work out*) \_\_\_\_\_ the program for several weeks before the final project was approved.
9. By next September we (*to test*) \_\_\_\_\_ the new equipment for 3 months.

**Ex. 3. Choose the right form of the Indefinite, Continuous, Perfect and Perfect Continuous Tenses.**

1. The world sea surrounds the earth and \_\_\_\_\_ to us all.  
a) is belonging;                      b) belongs;                      c) has belonged.
2. Scientists in many different countries \_\_\_\_\_ to explain its mystery.  
a) are working;                      b) have worked;                      c) worked.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ ever a film in which a train crashed or a ship sank?  
a) Did \_\_\_\_ see;                      b) Have \_\_\_\_ seen;                      c) Do \_\_\_\_ see.
4. It \_\_\_\_\_ since early morning.  
a) rained;                                      b) had rained;                      c) has been raining.
5. You are a good foot-ball player. Since when \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ football?  
a) have \_ been playing;    b) did \_\_\_\_ play;    c) had \_\_\_\_\_ been playing.
6. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ music lessons for three years now.  
a) have taken;                      b) has been taking;                      c) took.
7. What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ at 4.30 tomorrow afternoon?  
a) would \_\_\_\_ do;                      b) were \_\_\_\_ do;                      c) will \_\_\_\_ be doing.
8. Probably, I \_\_\_\_\_ my friends at this time.  
a) will have visited;                      b) will be visiting;                      c) have visited.
9. – Have you finished the translation yet? – I \_\_\_\_\_ the translation by 9 o'clock tomorrow morning.  
a) will have finished;                      b) have finished;                      c) had finished.
10. In three months he \_\_\_\_\_ here a year.  
a) has been;                                      b) will have been;                      c) was.
11. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ on the ship for 15 years by next year.  
a) was serving;                      b) have served;                      c) will have been serving.
12. By two o'clock the students will \_\_\_\_\_ the test translation for two hours.  
a) be doing;                                      b) have been doing;                      c) do.
13. When Jim came out of the army he \_\_\_\_\_ what to do.  
a) is wondering;                      b) has wondered;                      c) was wondering.
14. Those who couldn't do it \_\_\_\_\_ TV or looking through the newspapers.  
a) were watching;                      b) have watched;                      c) are watching.
15. By the sixteenth century a new economic system \_\_\_\_\_ feudalism.  
a) replaced;                                      b) was replacing;                      c) had replaced.
16. The war broke out in 1914. The European ruling classes \_\_\_\_\_ for it for 20 years.  
a) prepared;                                      b) had prepared;                      c) had been preparing.
17. It \_\_\_\_\_ any more. Let's have some fun on the lawn.  
a) does not rain;                      b) is not raining;  
c) has not rained;                      d) did not rain.
18. I taught Italian for my Master's degree but now I \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese.  
a) will teach;                                      b) have taught;  
c) am teaching;                      d) teach.
19. Your accent is not local. Where \_\_\_\_\_ come from?  
a) have you;                                      b) do you;  
c) did you;                                      d) you.
20. He \_\_\_\_\_ always me flowers for my birthday.  
a) is sending;                                      b) sends;  
c) had send;                                      d) sent.

21. She \_\_\_\_\_ always soup on her dress. Well, what do you expect from a child?

- a) is spilling;                      b) spills;
- c) has spilt;                        d) spilt.

22. I \_\_\_\_\_ the boss tomorrow morning.

- a) will see;                        b) see;
- c) am seeing;                      d) will have seen.

23. Why \_\_\_\_\_ so rude?

- a) you have been;                b) are you being;
- c) do you behave;                d) you are.

24. She \_\_\_\_\_ very hard before the exam and passed it.

- a) had studied;                    b) did study;
- c) was studying;                d) studied.

25. – The travel was very enjoyable. – Where \_\_\_\_\_ to?

- a) did you go;                    b) have you gone;
- c) were you going;               d) had you gone.

26. After the party last night I \_\_\_\_\_ home.

- a) was walking;                   b) walked;
- c) had walked;                   d) have walked.

27. Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ a horse?

- a) ride;                            b) rode;
- c) rid;                              d) ridden.

28. I \_\_\_\_\_ Sandra for a long time.

- a) have known;                   b) know;
- c) am knowing;                   d) have been knowing.

29. It's ages since he \_\_\_\_\_ shopping. I am beginning to worry.

- a) went;                            b) was going;
- c) had gone;                       d) has gone.

30. The Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ printing, not the Japanese. This invention is really great.

- a) have invented;                b) had invented;
- c) invented;                       d) were inventing.

31. Sarah had left the club before I \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) arrived;                        b) had arrived;
- c) was arriving;                d) have arrived.

32. I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast this morning and it has been such a long day.

- a) did not have;                   b) have not had;
- c) was not having;               d) had not had.

33. I \_\_\_\_\_ always my holiday in France.

- a) have taken;                    b) take;
- c) am taking;                     d) had taken.

34. After his mother \_\_\_\_\_ him, poor Tom was alone in the world.  
 a) had abandoned;                      b) abandoned;  
 c) has abandoned;                      d) did abandon.
35. Sally's eyes were still red because she \_\_\_\_\_ onions.  
 a) was peeling;                              b) had been peeling;  
 c) has been peeling;                      d) peeled.
36. Walt Disney \_\_\_\_\_ his first cartoon film before 1928.  
 a) had made;                                  b) has made;  
 c) made;    d) was making.

## Тема 15. Согласование времен

**Ex. Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate verbal forms.**

1. He said that he (*to return*) \_\_\_\_\_ very soon.
2. She knew that he (*to come*) \_\_\_\_\_ in a day or two.
3. He said that he (*to send*) \_\_\_\_\_ the telegram the following day.
4. They informed us that the delegation (*to arrive*) \_\_\_\_\_ next Sunday.
5. I was sure that he (*to join*) \_\_\_\_\_ us as soon as possible.
6. He said that by next September we (*to test*) \_\_\_\_\_ the new equipment for 3 months.
7. He wondered if she (*to translate*) \_\_\_\_\_ the article by noon.
8. I found out that by the year 1997 she (*to work*) \_\_\_\_\_ at the University for 20 years.

## KEYS TO TESTS

### Тема 1

**Ex. 1:** 1) is; 2) am; 3) is; 4) are; 5) is; 6) is; 7) am; 8) is; 9) are; 10) is, are; 11) am; 12) is; 13) was, is; 14) is, was; 15) am; 16) was; 17) were; 18) are; 19) were; 20) is; 21) was; 22) were; 23) was; 24) are, were.

**Ex. 2:** 1) My grandparents are very old. 2) My desk is very comfortable. 3) Your spectacles are in your bag. 4) I am not very clever today. 5) This house is very expensive. 6) The shops are not open today. 7) Mr. Wren's grandson is six years old. 8) The houses in this street are very big. 9) The examination is not difficult. 10) Those flowers are very beautiful.

**Ex. 3:** 1) is; 2) is; 3) am / am not; 4) is / isn't; 5) is; 6) am / am not; 7) are / aren't; 8) is; 9) isn't; 10) aren't; 11) is; 12) aren't; 13) was, wasn't; 14) was; 15) weren't, were; 16) wasn't, was; 17) weren't, was; 18) will be, won't, will be.

**Ex. 4:** 1) Is your brother at home? 2) This hotel is very expensive. 3) I am interested in art. 4) All shops are open today. 5) My sister is an architect. 6) They aren't students, they are doctors. 7) Where were they yesterday evening? 8) He wasn't at the Institute yesterday. 9) I wasn't there. 10) She won't be at home at 5.

## **Tema 2**

**Ex. 1:** 1) have; 2) have; 3) had; 4) will have; 5) has; 6) has; 7) had; 8) has; 9) have; 10) has, have.

**Ex. 2:** 1) My grandparents have a very old house. 2) I have a very comfortable desk. 3) She has your spectacles in my bag. 4) I had breakfast yesterday. 5) The bag has no handle. 6) They will have a car next month. 7) Mr. Wren's grandson has six balls. 8) The houses in this street have no balconies. 9) The students had the examination last term. 10) The woman has very beautiful flowers in her garden.

**Ex. 3:** 1) They have three dogs and three cats. 2) She has large green eyes. 3) My brother had a grey car last year. 4) How much grounds have you got? 5) My sister has a red car. 6) I had a headache yesterday. 7) Have you got any books on transport history? 8) When do you have tea? 9) We'll have a good time tomorrow. 10) She had a good vacation on the south.

## **Tema 3**

**Ex. 1:** was / was / were / had / were / was.

**Ex. 2:** 1) there is; 2) there are; 3) is there; 4) are there; 5) there wasn't; 6) there was; 7) were there; 8) there is; 9) there are; 10) there is; 11) there will be; 12) there was.

**Ex. 3:** 1) Is there a cat in the window? 2) Are there a few changes in the text? 3) Are there plenty of glasses in the cupboard? 4) Were there a lot of people at the stadium? 5) Is there anything on the plate? 6) Was there anybody in the room? 7) Are there difficult exercises in this book? 8) Is there anything on the shelf? 9) Will there be any interesting programmes on TV tomorrow? 10) Are there several empty seats in the room? 11) Were there any pears on the plate?

## **Tema 4**

**Ex. 1:** 1) a; 2) –; 3) –; 4) a / the / –; 5) – / a; 6) – / –; 7) the, –; 8) –; 9) the / a / the / the; 10) –.

**Ex. 2:** 1) a; 2) b; 3) –; 4) a; 5) c; 6) a; 7) c; 8) c; 9) b; 10) a.

## **Tema 5**

**Ex. 1:** game, children, foot, shelves, sister-in-law, tomatoes, datum, keys, lorry, office managers, box.

**Ex. 2:** foxes, knives, boys, cities, names, mice, leaves, roofs, children, glasses, pianos, fathers, sheep, tomatoes, hats, men, houses, brothers-in-law, teeth, hospitals, towns.

## **Tema 6**

**Ex. 1:** 1) farther; 2) farther; 3) worse; 4) lesser; 5) last / latest; 6) further; 7) well; 8) last / latest; 9) eldest; 10) smaller; 11) less / lesser; 12) elder; 13) most; 14) better; 15) better; 16) farthest; 17) oldest; 18) elder; 19) least; 20) most.

**Ex. 2:** 1) the most interesting book; 2) the most popular; 3) the most outstanding; 4) the most important; 5) the cleverest; 6) bigger size; 7) more interested; 8) easier; 9) quieter; 10) more crowded; 11) earlier; 12) more often; 13) more expensive; 14) nearer.

**Ex. 3:** 1) The bus isn't so fast as the train. 2) My flat is as big as her flat. 3) His voice isn't so brilliant as Caruso's. 4) The pound isn't so deep as the river. 5) Your typing as fast as hers. 6) This lecture is as interesting as that lecture. 7) This hat isn't so beautiful as that hat. 8) His article isn't so long as her article.

**Ex. 4:** 1) fainter, fainter; 2) more intelligent; 3) most practical; 4) more advanced, young; 5) latest; 6) good, better; 7) more angry; 8) wiser; 9) more, more complex; 10) clever-

est; 11) good, better; 12) worse; 13) nearest; 14) last; 15) longer, shorter; 16) tallest; 17) more amusing; 18) younger.

**Ex. 5:** 1) He is more busy than you. 2) This year was the most difficult for us. 3) Have you read his last article? 4) You are as beautiful as your mother. 5) It's easier for me to know the truth. 6) Last winter wasn't so cold as this one. 7) The more we read, the more we know about our world. 8) I am an old man already; I'm twice older than you.

### **Tema 7**

**Ex. 1:** 1) 268 metres long, 55 metres high, 9 docks; 2) 400 mln American dollars; 3) 50 000 dollars for the 1<sup>st</sup>-class apartments, 1 424 dollars for the 1<sup>st</sup>-class passengers, 600 for the 2<sup>nd</sup>-class passengers, 460 dollars for the 3<sup>d</sup>-class passengers; 4) 2 227 people, lifeboats for 1 100; 5) about 1 500 lives.

**Ex. 2:** 1) b; 2) b; 3) c; 4) d; 5) c; 6) c; 7) b; 8) b; 9) b; 10) a; 11) c; 12) b.

**Ex. 3:** 1) a quarter; 2) a half; 3) a half; 4) three quarters.

**Ex. 4:** 1) c; 2) b; 3) a; 4) c; 5) a; 6) a; 7) b; 8) c; 9) a; 10) b.

### **Tema 8**

**Ex. 1:** 1) b; 2) a; 3) a, b; 4) b; 5) a, c; 6) a; 7) c; 8) b; 9) b; 10) a, b; 11) b; 12) b; 13) b; 14) b; 15) c; 16) c.

**Ex. 2:** 1) any; 2) any; 3) no; 4) no; 5) any, some; 6) any, some; 7) any; 8) no; 9) no; 10) any.

**Ex. 3:** 1) much; 2) much, little; 3) little, much; 4) few; 5) much, few; 6) a little, little; 7) many, few; 8) a few; 9) a little; 10) much.

**Ex. 4:** 1) anybody; 2) anything; 3) nothing; 4) something; 5) somebody; 6) nobody; 7) nothing; 8) everybody; 9) somebody; 10) nothing.

**Ex. 5:** 1) her; 2) it; 3) it, her; 4) him; 5) her; 6) them; 7) him; 8) he, it.

**Ex. 6:** 1) They are his. 2) It's mine. 3) They are hers. 4) They are theirs. 5) It's yours. 6) They are ours. 7) They are theirs. 8) It's hers.

**Ex. 7:** 1) himself; 2) myself; 3) themselves; 4) ourselves; 5) themselves; 6) himself; 7) ourselves.

### **Tema 9**

**Ex. 1:** 1) different; 2) differently; 3) exact; 4) exactly; 5) perfectly; 6) perfect; 7) slowly, quietly; 8) quiet, slow; 9) serious; 10) seriously; 11) simple; 12) simply; 13) hard; 14) hardly; 15) nearly; 16) near; 17) lately; 18) late; 19) widely.

**Ex. 2:** 1) more, sooner; 2) later; 3) the best; 4) worse; 5) farther; 6) the worst; 7) more quickly; 8) less.

**Ex. 3:** 1) deeply; 2) thoroughly; 3) highly; 4) wide; 5) strongly, hardly; 6) soon; 7) clearly; 8) heavily; 9) loudly, long; 10) easier.

**Ex. 4:** 1) It is *pretty* difficult to speak to her. The hall was *prettily* decorated. 2) I saw a plane *high* in the sky. The idea seems *highly* improbable. 3) We have heard very little of him *lately*. He usually comes home *late* after classes. 4) I can *hardly* understand what he is saying. You must work *hard* at your spelling. 5) We were *nearly* late. We made sure it was safe before we went *near*. 6) I love my son *dearly*. They sell these coats *dear*.

**Ex. 5:** 1) c; 2) b; 3) a; 4) c; 5) b; 6) b.

### **Tema 10**

**Ex. 1:** 1) in; 2) in, at, out of; 3) in, out; 4) in; 5) to; 6) near (by); 7) in; 8) from; 9) from; 10) out of, on.



**Ex. 2:** 1) in front of; 2) behind; 3) near (by); 4) over; 5) below; 6) above; 7) over; 8) above; 9) between; 10) among; 11) round; 12) to, to; 13) to; 14) to; 15) to, to, to.

**Ex. 3:** 1) for; 2) at, in; 3) in; 4) on, at; 5) on; 6) at, to; 7) on; 8) in; 9) till; 10) at.

**Ex. 4:** 1) at; 2) in; 3) for (during); 4) on; 5) since; 6) at; 7) for (during); 8) before, after; 9) in; 10) at.

**Ex. 5:** 1) in front of; 2) in spite of; 3) instead of; 4) because of; 5) in spite of; 6) by means of.

**Ex. 6:** 1) b; 2) c; 3) b; 4) a; 5) a; 6) c; 7) a; 8) b; 9) a; 10) b; 11) a; 12) c; 13) a.

### **Tema 11**

**Ex. 1:** 1) b; 2) c; 3) a; 4) c; 5) b.

**Ex. 2:** 1) although; 2) as soon as; 3) because; 4) despite; 5) whether; 6) where; 7) so as; 8) so; 9) or; 10) although; 11) but; 12) because; 13) so; 14) when; 15) since; 16) that's why; 17) though; 18) while; 19) but; 20) as if; 21) until; 22) but; 23) that; 24) that; 25) because of; 26) if; 27) because; 28) not so \_ as; 29) because; 30) as soon as; 31) what; 32) unless; 33) or; 34) that.

### **Tema 12**

**Ex. 1:** 1) Yes, I've got a brown one. 2) Yes, she's got a yellow one. 3) Yes, they've got a blue one. 4) Yes, she's got a new grey one. 5) Yes she's got a gold one. 6) Yes, Peggy's got a white one. 7) Yes, the boys have got a green one. 8) Yes, Kate's got a new pink one. 9) Yes, Jim's got new brown ones. 10) Yes, Jane's got a new pair of black ones. 11) Yes, Paul has got silk green and red ones.

**Ex. 2:** 1) Do you mean the black one? 2) Do you mean the small one? 3) Do you mean the English ones? 4) Do you mean the yellow one? 5) Do you mean the big ones? 6) Do you mean the brown ones? 7) Do you mean the new one? 8) Do you mean the long one?

### **Tema 14.1**

**Ex. 1:** 1) The student works in the laboratory every day. 2) My child goes to school. 3) He gets new books from the library every month. 4) She usually visits her grandparents on week-ends. 5) The postman brings newspapers twice a day. 6) You know many English words. 7) My friend takes English lessons three times a week. 8) The pupil repeats new rules before the lesson. 9) I usually read newspapers in the evening. 10) The worker comes to the factory at 8 o'clock.

**Ex. 2:** 1) started; 2) leaves; 3) stay; 4) will finish; 5) came; 6) writes; 7) reads; 8) speak; 9) put, went; 10) went; 11) read; 12) will wait; 13) will bring; 14) will work; 15) will become.

**Ex. 3:** 1) a; 2) b; 3) c; 4) c; 5) b; 6) a; 7) c; 8) b; 9) c; 10) c; 11) b; 12) b; 13) a; 14) b; 15) c; 16) c; 17) c; 18) b; 19) a; 20) b.

### **Tema 14.2**

**Ex. 1:** 1) was laughing, was going on; 2) are you talking, are you discussing; 3) are you leaving; 4) will you speak; 5) wears, doesn't see; 6) are you wearing; 7) is living, is looking; 8) was sitting; 9) saw, was trying; 10) was writing, wrote / was writing; 11) were walking, was getting; 12) are leaving, gets; 13) see; 14) will hear; 15) 'll be, 'll be watching; 16) was waiting; 17) was trying; 18) rains, was raining, was raining.

**Ex. 2:** 1) b; 2) b; 3) a; 4) c; 5) b; 6) b; 7) a; 8) a; 9) b; 10) a; 11) b; 12) b; 13) b; 14) b; 15) b; 16) a; 17) b; 18) b; 19) a; 20) a; 21) b.

#### **Темы 14.3 и 14.4**

**Ex. 1:** 1) have done; 2) have moved; 3) has happened; 4) has refused; 5) has finished; 6) have traveled, have been; 7) have been, have visited; 8) had finished; 9) had changed / would have changed; 10) had stopped; 11) had tested; 12) will have made; 13) will have completed; 14) will have repaired; 15) will have stopped.

**Ex. 2:** 1) have been ringing; 2) have been playing; 3) has been working; 4) have been discussing; 5) had been doing; 6) hadn't been raining; 7) had been practicing; 8) had been working out; 9) will have been testing.

**Ex. 3:** 1) b; 2) a; 3) b; 4) c; 5) a; 6) b; 7) c; 8) b; 9) a; 10) b; 11) c; 12) b; 13) c; 14) a; 15) c; 16) c; 17) c; 18) c; 19) b; 20) b; 21) b; 22) a; 23) b; 24) a; 25) b; 26) a; 27) d; 28) a; 29) a; 30) c; 31) a; 32) a; 33) b; 34) a; 35) b; 36) c.

#### **Тема 15**

**Ex.:** 1) would return; 2) would come; 3) would send; 4) would arrive; 5) would join; 6) would have been testing; 7) would have translated; 8) would have been working.

## **ЗАКЛЮЧЕНИЕ**

Вы познакомились только с первой частью учебного пособия, которая должна помочь вам усвоить трудные вопросы английской грамматики. Так как студенты мыслят на родном языке, тесное взаимодействие родного и иностранного языков в процессе обучения играет исключительную роль. Автор стремился при этом отмечать как различие между грамматическими явлениями в обоих языках, так и их сходство. Учитывая, что студенты стремятся переносить в иностранную речь конструкции, свойственные русскому языку, автор делает в ряде разделов соответствующие предупреждения, чтобы предотвратить возникающие в связи с этим типичные ошибки. Впереди вас ожидает не менее интересное путешествие в грамматику английского языка, где вы встретитесь с такими понятиями, как пассивный залог, неличные формы глагола и многими другими.

## **БИБЛИОГРАФИЧЕСКИЙ СПИСОК**

1. Дроздова, Т. Ю. English Grammar : Reference and Practice. Version 2 / Т. Ю. Дроздова, В. Г. Маилова, А. И. Берестова. – СПб. : Антология, 2012. – 424 с.
2. Качалова, К. Н. Практическая грамматика английского языка с упражнениями и ключами / К. Н. Качалова, Е. Е. Израилевич. – М. : ЮНВЕС, 1996. – 720 с.
3. Козлова, Н. Г. Упражнения по грамматике английского языка для студентов неязыковых специальностей : учеб.-методическое пособие / Н. Г. Козлова. – Комсомольск-на-Амуре : ГОУВПО «КнАГТУ», 2003. – 103 с.

4. Кохан, О. В. Особенности коммуникативного процесса в немецкой и русской культуре / О. В. Кохан // Ученые записки Комсомольского-на-Амуре гос техн. ун-та. Науки о человеке, обществе и культуре. – 2010. – № I-2(1) . – С. 54-57.
5. Английский язык для студентов технических специальностей заочной формы обучения : методические указания / сост. Е. Ю. Першина. – Комсомольск-на-Амуре : ГОУВПО «КнАГТУ», 2004. – 32 с.
6. Тарануха, Н. А. Английский язык для транспортных специальностей вузов. В 2 т. Т. 1. Базовый профессиональный курс : учеб. пособие / Н. А. Тарануха, Е. Ю. Першина. – М. : СОЛОН-Пресс, 2011. – 280 с.
7. Тарануха, Н. А. Английский язык для транспортных специальностей вузов. В 2 т. Т. 2. Специализированный курс : учеб. пособие / Н. А. Тарануха, Е. Ю. Першина. – М. : СОЛОН-Пресс, 2011. – 272 с.
8. Экономакис, Э. Артикли / Э. Экономакис, А. Жуковский. – СПб. : ООО ИПЦ «КАРО», 2008. – 160 с.
9. Першина, Е. Ю. Практическая грамматика английского языка. Глагольные формы и синтаксис : учеб. пособие / Е. Ю. Першина. – Комсомольск-на-Амуре : ФГБОУ ВПО «КнАГТУ», 2015. – 173 с.

*Учебное издание*

**Першина Елена Юрьевна**

**ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА.  
МОРФОЛОГИЯ**

Учебное пособие

Научный редактор – кандидат культурологии, доцент Л. В. Воробец

Редактор Т. Н. Карпова

Подписано в печать 12.03.2015.

Формат 60 × 84 1/16. Бумага 65 г/м<sup>2</sup>. Ризограф EZ570E.

Усл. печ. л. 11,65. Уч.-изд. л. 11,32. Тираж 50 экз. Заказ 26877.

Редакционно-издательский отдел  
Федерального государственного бюджетного образовательного учреждения  
высшего профессионального образования  
«Комсомольский-на-Амуре государственный технический университет»  
681013, г. Комсомольск-на-Амуре, пр. Ленина, 27.

Полиграфическая лаборатория  
Федерального государственного бюджетного образовательного учреждения  
высшего профессионального образования  
«Комсомольский-на-Амуре государственный технический университет»  
681013, г. Комсомольск-на-Амуре, пр. Ленина, 27.